



jSt48bl a C134955

**THE PUBLIC LIBRARY**

of  
Fort Wayne and Allen County, Ind.  
Information For Country Borrowers

Books are free to all residents of Allen County. They may be borrowed from the Main Library at Fort Wayne or from any Branch, Reading Room, Deposit Station or School Library in Allen County.

Books will be sent by parcel post, prepaid to any borrower living a distance from a Library Station.

COUNTY DEPARTMENT  
ANTHONY 3333

WITHDRAWN

570

ALLEN COUNTY PUBLIC LIBRARY




3 1833 00799 8153

SEP 1









Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2010









" First came the bride, clinging to Sir Daniel's arm. "

The Academy Classics

---

ROBERT LOUIS STEVENSON

THE BLACK ARROW

EDITED BY

DOROTHY LOOMIS HOLM

DEPARTMENT OF ENGLISH  
SKINNER JUNIOR HIGH SCHOOL  
DENVER, COLORADO



*JS+48bla*

ALLYN AND BACON

BOSTON  
ATLANTA

NEW YORK  
SAN FRANCISCO

CHICAGO  
DALLAS

COPYRIGHT, 1926  
BY ALLYN AND BACON

ETI

Norwood Press  
J. S. Cushing Co. — Berwick & Smith Co.  
Norwood, Mass., U.S.A.



## PREFACE

*The Black Arrow* has been included in this series of texts for Junior High Schools because of its strong appeal to young readers. A youth is the hero, as in *Treasure Island*; it is a stirring story of a period that challenges the interest and imagination of the reader; it is a simple narrative, told with honest directness.

The footnotes, questions to guide study, and illustrations are features of the text designed to help the pupil to read with speed, comprehension, and appreciation.

D. L. H.

CO. SCHOOLS

0134955

## ILLUSTRATIONS

	PAGE
“First came the bride, clinging to Sir Daniel’s arm” <i>Frontispiece</i>	
“Pluck out the shaft, and let me pass. I be done with old England” . . . . . <i>facing</i>	11
“Ye have called me, Sir Daniel. Was it to laugh at my poor plight?” . . . . . <i>facing</i>	30
“His hand had closed on something firm and strong” . . . . .	55
“The lad gave one scream and fell limp into his captor’s arms” . . . . . <i>facing</i>	104
“Dick ran to the door, drew the bolt, and admitted Matcham” . . . . . <i>facing</i>	137
“And it was with some confusion of manner that Dick arose from the cross” . . . . . <i>facing</i>	188
“Lawless drew a black arrow from below his robe and pinned the paper in its place” . . . . . <i>facing</i>	251
“Then did Dick hold up his reeking blade and give the word to cheer” . . . . . <i>facing</i>	316
“Ay, dear, ye are my lady now” . . . . . <i>facing</i>	359
Robert Louis Stevenson . . . . . <i>facing</i>	377
Edinburgh Castle . . . . . <i>facing</i>	379
In the South Seas . . . . .	390
Vailima . . . . .	392
In Samoa . . . . .	393
Stevenson in Samoa . . . . .	395
The Tomb of Stevenson and His Wife in Samoa . . . . .	396
Henry VI of England . . . . .	398
Joan of Arc . . . . .	399
A Crossbowman . . . . .	403
Crossbowmen . . . . .	404

# CONTENTS

## PROLOGUE

	PAGE
JOHN AMEND-ALL . . . . .	I

## BOOK I: THE TWO LADS

### CHAPTER

I. AT THE SIGN OF THE SUN IN KETTLEY . . . . .	26
II. IN THE FEN . . . . .	40
III. THE FEN FERRY . . . . .	49
IV. A GREENWOOD COMPANY . . . . .	61
V. "BLOODY AS THE HUNTER" . . . . .	73
VI. TO THE DAY'S END . . . . .	86
VII. THE HOODED FACE . . . . .	97

## BOOK II: THE MOAT HOUSE

I. DICK ASKS QUESTIONS . . . . .	110
II. THE TWO OATHS . . . . .	123
III. THE ROOM OVER THE CHAPEL . . . . .	135
IV. THE PASSAGE . . . . .	145
V. HOW DICK CHANGED SIDES . . . . .	153

## BOOK III: MY LORD FOXHAM

I. THE HOUSE BY THE SHORE . . . . .	166
II. A SKIRMISH IN THE DARK . . . . .	177
III. ST. BRIDE'S CROSS . . . . .	187
IV. THE <i>Good Hope</i> . . . . .	193



# Contents

CHAPTER	PAGE
V. THE <i>Good Hope</i> (Continued) . . . . .	206
VI. THE <i>Good Hope</i> (Concluded) . . . . .	216

## BOOK IV: THE DISGUISE

I. THE DEN . . . . .	225
II. "IN MINE ENEMIES' HOUSE" . . . . .	236
III. THE DEAD SPY . . . . .	250
IV. IN THE ABBEY CHURCH . . . . .	262
V. EARL RISINGHAM . . . . .	276
VI. ARBLASTER AGAIN . . . . .	282

## BOOK V: CROOKBACK

I. THE SHRILL TRUMPET . . . . .	298
II. THE BATTLE OF SHOREBY . . . . .	309
III. THE BATTLE OF SHOREBY (Concluded) . . . . .	319
IV. THE SACK OF SHOREBY . . . . .	326
V. NIGHT IN THE WOODS: ALICIA RISINGHAM . . . . .	341
VI. NIGHT IN THE WOODS (Concluded): DICK AND JOAN . . . . .	352
VII. DICK'S REVENGE . . . . .	367
VIII. CONCLUSION . . . . .	373

## APPENDIX

ROBERT LOUIS STEVENSON . . . . .	377
HISTORICAL SETTING OF <i>The Black Arrow</i> . . . . .	397
SOCIAL BACKGROUND OF <i>The Black Arrow</i> . . . . .	403
TOPICS FOR GROUP DISCUSSION . . . . .	412
BOOKS THAT TELL THE STORY OF OTHER DAYS . . . . .	432

# THE BLACK ARROW

## A TALE OF THE TWO ROSES

---

### PROLOGUE

**John Amend-All**

ON a certain afternoon, in the late spring time, the bell upon Tunstall Moat House was heard ringing at an unaccustomed hour. Far and near, in the forest and in the fields along the river, people began to desert their labors and hurry towards the sound ; 5 and in Tunstall hamlet a group of poor country-folk stood wondering at the summons.

Tunstall hamlet at that period, in the reign of old King Henry VI, wore much the same appearance that it wears to-day. A score or so of houses, 10 heavily framed with oak, stood scattered in a long green valley ascending from the river. At the foot, the road crossed a bridge, and mounting on the other side, disappeared into the fringes of the forest on its way to the Moat House, and further 15 forth to Holywood Abbey. Half-way up the village the church stood among yews. On every side

---

LINE 2. **Tunstall**: a town in Staffordshire, England.

## The Black Arrow

the slopes were crowned and the view bounded by the green elms and greening oak-trees of the forest.

Hard by the bridge there was a stone cross upon a knoll, and here the group had collected — half a dozen women and one tall fellow in a russet smock — discussing what the bell betided. An express had gone through the hamlet half an hour before, and drunk a pot of ale in the saddle, not daring to dismount for the hurry of his errand; but he had  
10 been ignorant himself of what was forward, and only bore sealed letters from Sir Daniel Brackley to Sir Oliver Oates, the parson, who kept the Moat House in the master's absence.

But now there was the noise of a horse; and soon,  
15 out of the edge of the wood and over the echoing bridge, there rode up young Master Richard Shelton, Sir Daniel's ward. He, at the least, would know, and they hailed him and begged him to explain. He drew bridle willingly enough — a  
20 young fellow not yet eighteen, sun-browned and grey-eyed, in a jacket of deer's leather, with a black velvet collar, a green hood upon his head, and a steel crossbow at his back. The express, it appeared, had brought great news. A battle was  
25 impending. Sir Daniel had sent for every man that could draw a bow or carry a bill to go posthaste to Kettley, under pain of his severe displeasure; but

---

LINE 6. *express*: a messenger. 26. *bill*: battle axe.



## John Amend-All

for whom they were to fight, or of where the battle was expected, Dick knew nothing. Sir Oliver would come shortly himself, and Bennet Hatch was arming at that moment, for he it was who should lead the party. 5

“It is the ruin of this kind land,” a woman said. “If the barons live at war, plowfolk must eat roots.”

“Nay,” said Dick, “every man that follows shall have sixpence a day, and archers twelve.” 10

“If they live,” returned the woman, “that may very well be; but how if they die, my master?”

“They cannot better die than for their natural lord,” said Dick.

“No natural lord of mine,” said the man in the 15 smock. “I followed the Walsinghams; so we all did down Brierly way, till two years ago come Candlemas. And now I must side with Brackley! It was the law that did it; call ye that natural? But now, what with Sir Daniel and what with Sir 20 Oliver — that knows more of law than honesty — I have no natural lord but poor King Harry the Sixt, God bless him! — the poor innocent that cannot tell his right hand from his left.”

“Ye speak with an ill tongue, friend,” answered 25 Dick, “to miscall your good master and my lord the king in the same libel. But King Harry —

---

LINE 18. **Candlemas**: a feast day in February. 27. **libel**: false accusation.

## The Black Arrow

praise be the saints! — has come again into his right mind, and will have all things peaceably ordained. And as for Sir Daniel, y' are very brave behind his back. But I will be no tale-bearer; 5 and let that suffice."

"I say no harm of you, Master Richard," returned the peasant. "Y' are a lad; but when ye come to a man's inches ye will find ye have an empty pocket. I say no more: the saints help Sir Daniel's 10 neighbors, and the Blessed Maid protect his wards!"

"Clipsby," said Richard, "you speak what I cannot hear with honor. Sir Daniel is my good master and my guardian."

"Come, now, will ye read me a riddle?" returned 15 Clipsby. "On whose side is Sir Daniel?"

"I know not," said Dick, coloring a little; for his guardian had changed sides continually in the troubles of that period, and every change had brought him some increase of fortune.

20 "Ay," returned Clipsby, "you, nor no man. For, indeed, he is one that goes to bed Lancaster and gets up York."

Just then the bridge rang under horseshoe iron, and the party turned and saw Bennet Hatch come 25 galloping — a brown-faced, grizzled fellow, heavy of hand and grim of mien, armed with sword and spear, a steel salet on his head, a leather jack upon

---

LINE 27. salet: helmet. jack: defensive jacket.

## John Amend-All

his body. He was a great man in these parts; Sir Daniel's right hand in peace and war, and at that time, by his master's interest, bailiff of the hundred.

"Clipsby," he shouted, "off to the Moat House, <sup>5</sup> and send all other laggards the same gate. Bowyer will give you jack and salet. We must ride before curfew. Look to it: he that is last at the lychgate Sir Daniel shall reward. Look to it right well! I know you for a man of naught. Nance," <sup>10</sup> he added, to one of the women, "is old Appleyard up town?"

"I'll warrant you," replied the woman. "In his field, for sure."

So the group dispersed, and while Clipsby walked <sup>15</sup> leisurely over the bridge, Bennet and young Shelton rode up the road together, through the village and past the church.

"Ye will see the old shrew," said Bennet. "He will waste more time grumbling and prating of Harry <sup>20</sup> the Fift than would serve a man to shoe a horse. And all because he has been to the French Wars!"

The house to which they were bound was the last in the village, standing alone among lilacs; and beyond it, on three sides, there was open <sup>25</sup> meadow rising towards the borders of the wood.

---

LINE 4. **hundred**: an ancient subdivision of a county.  
8. **lychgate**: a churchyard gate, covered by a roof.  
19. **shrew**: a quarrelsome person.

## The Black Arrow

Hatch dismounted, threw his rein over the fence, and walked down the field, Dick keeping close at his elbow, to where the old soldier was digging, knee-deep in his cabbages, and now and again, in a cracked voice, singing a snatch of song. He was all dressed in leather, only his hood and tippet were of black frieze, and tied with scarlet; his face was like a walnut-shell, both for color and wrinkles; but his old grey eye was still clear enough, and his sight unabated. Perhaps he was deaf; perhaps he thought it unworthy of an old archer of Agincourt to pay any heed to such disturbances; but neither the surly notes of the alarm-bell, nor the near approach of Bennet and the lad, appeared at all to move him; and he continued obstinately digging, and piped up, very thin and shaky:

“Now, dear lady, if thy will be,  
I pray you that you will rue on me.”

“Nick Appleyard,” said Hatch, “Sir Oliver commends him to you, and bids that ye shall come within this hour to the Moat House, there to take command.”

The old fellow looked up.

“Save you, my masters!” he said, grinning.  
“And where goeth Master Hatch?”

“Master Hatch is off to Kettleby, with every

---

LINE 6. *tippet*: an outdoor covering for the neck and shoulders. 7. *frieze*: coarse woolen cloth. 18. *rue*: pity.



## John Amend-All

man that we can horse," returned Bennet. "There is a fight toward, it seems, and my lord stays a reinforcement."

"Ay, verily," returned Appleyard. "And what will ye leave me to garrison withal?" 5

"I leave you six good men, and Sir Oliver to boot," answered Hatch.

"It'll not hold the place," said Appleyard; "the number sufficeth not. It would take two score to make it good." 10

"Why, it's for that we came to you, old shrew!" replied the other. "Who else is there but you that could do aught in such a house with such a garrison?"

"Ay, when the pinch comes, ye remember the 15 old shoe," returned Nick. "There is not a man of you can back a horse or hold a bill; and as for archery — St. Michael! if old Harry the Fift were back again, he would stand and let ye shoot at him for a farthing a shoot!" 20

"Nay, Nick, there's some can draw a good bow yet," said Bennet.

"Draw a good bow!" cried Appleyard. "Yes! But who'll shoot me a good shoot? It's there the eye comes in, and the head between your shoulders. 25 Now, what might you call a long shoot, Bennet Hatch?"

---

LINE 6. to boot: besides.



## The Black Arrow

“Well,” said Bennet, looking about him, “it would be a long shoot from here into the forest.”

“Ay, it would be a longish shoot,” said the old fellow, turning to look over his shoulder; and then 5 he put up his hand over his eyes, and stood staring.

“Why, what are you looking at?” asked Bennet, with a chuckle. “Do you see Harry the Fift?”

The veteran continued looking up the hill in silence. The sun shone broadly over the shelving 10 meadows; a few white sheep wandered browsing; all was still but the distant jangle of the bell.

“What is it, Appleyard?” asked Dick.

“Why, the birds,” said Appleyard.

And, sure enough, over the top of the forest, 15 where it ran down in a tongue among the meadows, and ended in a pair of goodly green elms, about a bowshot from the field where they were standing, a flight of birds was skimming to and fro, in evident disorder.

20 “What of the birds?” said Bennet.

“Ay!” returned Appleyard, “y’ are a wise man to go to war, Master Bennet. Birds are a good sentry; in forest places they be the first line of battle. Look you, now, if we lay here in camp, 25 there might be archers skulking down to get the wind of us; and here would you be, none the wiser!”

“Why, old shrew,” said Hatch, “there be no men nearer us than Sir Daniel’s, at Kettley; y’ are

## John Amend-All

as safe as in London Tower; and ye raise scares upon a man for a few chaffinches and sparrows!"

"Hear him!" grinned Appleyard. "How many a rogue would give his two crop ears to have a shoot at either of us! Saint Michael, man! they hate us like two pole cats!"

"Well, sooth it is, they hate Sir Daniel," answered Hatch, a little sobered.

"Ay, they hate Sir Daniel, and they hate every man that serves with him," said Appleyard; "and in the first order of hating, they hate Bennet Hatch and old Nicholas the bowman. See ye here: if there was a stout fellow yonder in the wood-edge, and you and I stood fair for him — as by Saint George, we stand! — which, think ye, would he choose?"

"You, for a good wager," answered Hatch.

"My surcoat to a leather belt, it would be you!" cried the old archer. "Ye burned Grimstone, Bennet — they'll ne'er forgive you that, my master. And as for me, I'll soon be in a good place, God grant, and out of bow-shoot — ay, and cannon-shoot — of all their malices. I am an old man, and draw fast to homeward, where the bed is ready. But for you, Bennet, y' are to remain behind here at your own peril, and if ye come to my years unhang'd, the old true-blue English spirit will be dead."

---

LINE 2. **chaffinches**: European finches.

## The Black Arrow

“Y’ are the shrewishest old dolt in Tunstall Forest,” returned Hatch, visibly ruffled by these threats. “Get ye to your arms before Sir Oliver come, and leave prating for one good while. An ye had talked so much with Harry the Fift, his ears would ha’ been richer than his pocket.”

An arrow sang in the air, like a huge hornet: it struck old Appleyard between the shoulder-blades, and pierced him clean through, and he fell  
10 forward on his face among the cabbages. Hatch, with a broken cry, leapt into the air; then, stooping double, he ran for the cover of the house. And in the meanwhile Dick Shelton had dropped behind a lilac, and had his crossbow bent and should-  
15 dered, covering the point of the forest.

Not a leaf stirred. The sheep were patiently browsing; the birds had settled. But there lay the old man, with a clothyard arrow standing in his back; and there were Hatch holding to the  
20 gable, and Dick crouching and ready behind the lilac bush.

“D’ye see aught?” cried Hatch.

“Not a twig stirs,” cried Dick.

“I think shame to leave him lying,” said Bennet,  
25 coming forward once more with hesitating steps and a very pale countenance. “Keep a good eye on the wood, Master Shelton — keep a clear eye

---

LINE 1. dolt: blockhead. 4. An: if.





“ Pluck out the shaft, and let me pass. I be done with old England.”



## John Amend-All

on the wood. The saints assoil us! here was a good shoot!"

Bennet raised the old archer on his knee. He was not yet dead; his face worked, and his eyes shut and opened like machinery, and he had a most horrible, ugly look of one in pain.

"Can ye hear, old Nick?" asked Hatch. "Have ye a last wish before ye wend, old brother?"

"Pluck out the shaft, and let me pass, a' Mary's name!" gasped Appleyard. "I be done with old England. Pluck it out!"

"Master Dick," said Bennet, "come hither, and pull me a good pull upon the arrow. He would fain pass, the poor sinner."

Dick laid down his crossbow, and pulling hard upon the arrow, drew it forth. A gush of blood followed; the old archer scrambled half upon his feet, called once upon the name of God, and then fell dead. Hatch, upon his knees among the cabbages, prayed fervently for the welfare of the passing spirit. But even as he prayed, it was plain that his mind was still divided, and he kept ever an eye upon the corner of the wood from which the shot had come. When he had done, he got to his feet again, drew off one of his mailed gauntlets, and wiped his pale face, which was all wet with terror.

---

LINE 1. assoil: pardon. 8. wend: go.

## The Black Arrow

"Ay," he said, "it'll be my turn next."

"Who hath done this, Bennet?" Richard asked, still holding the arrow in his hand.

"Nay, the saints know," said Hatch. "Here  
5 are a good two score Christian souls that we have hunted out of house and holding, he and I. He has paid his shot, poor shrew, nor will it be long, mayhap, ere I pay mine. Sir Daniel driveth overhard."

10 "This is a strange shaft," said the lad, looking at the arrow in his hand.

"Ay, by my faith!" cried Bennet. "Black, and black-feathered. Here is an ill-favored shaft, by my sooth! for black, they say, bodes burial.  
15 And here be words written. Wipe the blood away. What read ye?"

"*Appulyaird fro Jon Amend-All,*" read Shelton. "What should this betoken?"

"Nay, I like it not," returned the retainer,  
20 shaking his head. "John Amend-All! Here is a rogue's name for those that be up in the world! But why stand we here to make a mark? Take him by the knees, good Master Shelton, while I lift him by the shoulders, and let us lay him  
25 in his house. This will be a rare shog to poor Sir Oliver; he will turn paper-color; he will pray like a windmill."

---

LINE 14. *bodes*: predicts. 18. *betoken*: signify. 25. *shog*: shock.

## John Amend-All

They took up the old archer, and carried him between them into his house, where he had dwelt alone. And there they laid him on the floor, out of regard for the mattress, and sought, as best they might, to straighten and compose his limbs. 5

Appleyard's house was clean and bare. There was a bed, with a blue cover, a cupboard, a great chest, a pair of joint-stools, a hinged table in the chimney-corner, and hung upon the wall the old soldier's armory of bows and defensive armor. 10 Hatch began to look about him curiously.

"Nick had money," he said. "He may have had three score pounds put by. I would I could light upon 't! When ye lose an old friend, Master Richard, the best consolation is to heir him. See, 15 now, this chest. I would go a mighty wager there is a bushel of gold therein. He had a strong hand to get, and a hard hand to keep withal, had Appleyard the archer. Now may God rest his spirit! Near eighty year he was afoot and about, and 20 ever getting; but now he's on the broad of his back, poor shrew, and no more lacketh; and if his chattels came to a good friend, he would be merrier, methinks, in heaven."

"Come, Hatch," said Dick, "respect his stone- 25 blind eyes. Would ye rob the man before his body? Nay, he would walk!"

---

LINE 23. *chattels*: property.

## The Black Arrow

Hatch made several signs of the cross; but by this time his natural complexion had returned, and he was not easily to be dashed from any purpose. It would have gone hard with the chest had not  
5 the gate sounded, and presently after the door of the house opened and admitted a tall, portly, ruddy, black-eyed man of near fifty, in a surplice and black robe.

“Appleyard,” the newcomer was saying, as he  
10 entered, but he stopped dead. “Ave Maria!” he cried. “Saints be our shield! What cheer is this?”

“Cold cheer with Appleyard, sir parson,” answered Hatch, with perfect cheerfulness. “Shot at his own door, and alighteth even now at purga-  
15 tory gates. Ay! There, if tales be true, he shall lack neither coal nor candle.”

Sir Oliver groped his way to a joint-stool, and sat down upon it, sick and white.

“This is a judgment! O, a great stroke!” he  
20 sobbed, and rattled off a leash of prayers.

Hatch meanwhile reverently doffed his salet and knelt down.

“Ay, Bennet,” said the priest, somewhat recovering, “and what may this be? What enemy hath  
25 done this?”

“Here, Sir Oliver, is the arrow. See, it is written upon with words,” said Dick.

---

LINE 20. leash: three.



## John Amend-All

“Nay,” cried the priest, “this is a foul hearing! John Amend-All! A right Lollardy word. And black of hue, as for an omen! Sirs, this knave arrow likes me not. But it importeth rather to take counsel. Who should this be? Bethink you, 5 Bennet. Of so many black ill-willers, which should he be that doth so hardily outface us? Simnel? I do much question it. The Walsinghams? Nay, they are not yet so broken; they still think to have the law over us, when times change. There was 10 Simon Malmesbury, too. How think ye, Bennet?”

“What think ye, sir,” returned Hatch, “of Ellis Duckworth?”

“Nay, Bennet, never. Nay, not he,” said the priest. “There cometh never any rising, Bennet, 15 from below — so all judicious chroniclers concord in their opinion; but rebellion traveleth ever downward from above; and when Dick, Tom, and Harry take them to their bills, look ever narrowly to see what lord is profited thereby. Now, Sir Daniel, 20 having once more joined him to the Queen’s party, is in ill odor with the Yorkist lords. Thence, Bennet, comes the blow — by what procuring, I yet seek; but therein lies the nerve of this discomfiture.”

25

“An’t please you, Sir Oliver,” said Bennet, “the

---

LINE 2. *Lollardy*: pertaining to followers of Wycliffe, the reformer, not approved by the Church. 4. *importeth*: advises us. 16. *concord*: agree.



## The Black Arrow

axles are so hot in this country that I have long been smelling fire. So did this poor sinner, Appleyard. And, by your leave, men's spirits are so foully inclined to all of us, that it needs neither  
5 York nor Lancaster to spur them on. Hear my plain thoughts: You, that are a clerk, and Sir Daniel, that sails on any wind, ye have taken many men's goods, and beaten and hanged not a few. Y'are called to count for this; in the end, I wot not  
10 how, ye have ever the uppermost at law, and ye think all patched. But give me leave, Sir Oliver: the man that ye have dispossessed and beaten is but the angrier, and some day, when the black devil is by, he will up with his bow and clout me a  
15 yard of arrow through your inwards."

"Nay, Bennet, y' are in the wrong. Bennet, ye should be glad to be corrected," said Sir Oliver. "Y' are a prater, Bennet, a talker, a babbler; your mouth is wider than your two ears. Mend it,  
20 Bennet, mend it."

"Nay, I say no more. Have it as ye list," said the retainer.

The priest now rose from the stool, and from the writing-case that hung about his neck took forth  
25 wax and a taper, and a flint and steel. With these he sealed up the chest and the cupboard with Sir Daniel's arms, Hatch looking on disconsolate; and

---

LINE 9. wot: know. 14. clout: strike.

## John Amend-All

then the whole party proceeded, somewhat timorously, to sally from the house and get to horse.

“’Tis time we were on the road, Sir Oliver,” said Hatch, as he held the priest’s stirrup while he mounted. 5

“Ay; but, Bennet, things are changed,” returned the parson. “There is now no Appleyard — rest his soul! — to keep the garrison. I shall keep you, Bennet. I must have a good man to rest me on in this day of black arrows. ‘The arrow that 10 flieth by day,’ saith the evangel; I have no mind of the context; nay, I am a sluggard priest, I am too deep in men’s affairs. Well, let us ride forth, Master Hatch. The jackmen should be at the church by now.” 15

So they rode forward down the road, with the wind after them, blowing the tails of the parson’s cloak; and behind them, as they went, clouds began to arise and blot out the sinking sun. They had passed three of the scattered houses that make 20 up Tunstall hamlet; when, coming to a turn, they saw the church before them. Ten or a dozen houses clustered immediately round it, but to the back the churchyard was next the meadows. At the lychgate, near a score of men were gathered, some 25 in the saddle, some standing by their horses’ heads. They were variously armed and mounted: some

---

LINE 14. **jackmen**: soldiers.

## The Black Arrow

with spears, some with bills, some with bows, and some bestriding plowhorses, still splashed with the mire of the furrow; for these were the very dregs of the country, and all the better men and  
5 the fair equipments were already with Sir Daniel in the field.

“We have not done amiss, praised be the cross of Holywood! Sir Daniel will be right well content,” observed the priest, inwardly numbering  
10 the troop.

“Who goes? Stand! if ye be true!” shouted Bennet.

A man was seen slipping through the churchyard among the yews; and at the sound of this summons  
15 he discarded all concealment, and fairly took to his heels for the forest. The men at the gate, who had been hitherto unaware of the stranger’s presence, woke and scattered. Those who had dismounted began scrambling into the saddle; the rest rode in  
20 pursuit; but they had to make the circuit of the consecrated ground, and it was plain their quarry would escape them. Hatch, roaring an oath, put his horse at the hedge, to head him off; but the  
beast refused, and sent his rider sprawling in the  
25 dust. And though he was up again in a moment, and had caught the bridle, the time had gone by, and the fugitive had gained too great a lead for any hope of capture.

---

LINE 21. quarry : the object of the chase.

## John Amend-All

The wisest of all had been Dick Shelton. Instead of starting in a vain pursuit, he had whipped his cross-bow from his back, bent it, and set a quarrel to the string; and now, when the others had desisted, he turned to Bennet, and asked if he should shoot.

“Shoot! shoot!” cried the priest, with sanguinary violence.

“Cover him, Master Dick,” said Bennet. “Bring me him down like a ripe apple.” 10

The fugitive was now within but a few leaps of safety; but this last part of the meadow ran very steeply up hill, and the man ran slower in proportion. What with the greyness of the falling night, and the uneven movements of the runner, it was 15 no easy aim; and as Dick levelled his bow, he felt a kind of pity, and a half desire that he might miss. The quarrel sped.

The man stumbled and fell, and a great cheer arose from Hatch and the pursuers. But they were 20 counting their corn before the harvest. The man fell lightly; he was lightly afoot again, turned and waved his cap in a bravado, and was out of sight next moment in the margin of the wood.

“And the plague go with him!” cried Bennet. 25  
“He has thieves’ heels: he can run, by St. Banbury! But you touched him, Master Shelton; he has stolen your quarrel.”

---

LINE 3. quarrel: an arrow used with the crossbow.



## The Black Arrow

“Nay, but what made he by the church?” asked Sir Oliver. “I am shrewdly afear’d there has been mischief here. Clipsby, good fellow, get ye down from your horse, and search thoroughly  
5 among the yews.”

Clipsby was gone but a little while ere he returned, carrying a paper.

“This writing was pinned to the church door,” he said, handing it to the parson. “I found naught  
10 else, sir parson.”

“Now, by the power of Mother Church,” cried Sir Oliver, “but this runs hard on sacrilege! For the king’s good pleasure, or the lord of the manor — well! But that every run-the-hedge in a green  
15 jerkin should fasten papers to the chancel door — nay, it runs hard on sacrilege, hard; and men have burned for matters of less weight! But what have we here? The light falls apace. Good Master Richard, y’ have young eyes. Read me, I pray,  
20 this libel.”

Dick Shelton took the paper in his hand and read it aloud. It contained some lines of a very rugged doggerel, hardly even rhyming, written in a gross character, and most uncouthly spelled. With the  
25 spelling somewhat bettered, this is how they ran:

---

LINE 12. *sacrilege*: the crime of violating sacred things.  
15. *jerkin*: jacket. 23. *doggerel*: poorly made verse.  
*gross*: faulty. 24. *uncouthly*: oddly.



## John Amend-All

“I had four blak arrows under my belt,  
Four for the greefs that I have felt,  
Four for the number of ill menne  
That have oppressed me now and then.

One is gone; one is wele sped; 5  
Old Apulyaird is ded.

One is for Maister Bennet Hatch,  
That burned Grimstone, walls and thatch.

One for Sir Oliver Oates,  
That cut Sir Harry Shelton’s throat. 10

Sir Daniel, ye shull have the fourt;  
We shull think it fair sport.

Ye shull each have your own part,  
A blak arrow in each blak heart.  
Get ye to your knees for to pray: 15  
Ye are ded theeves, by yea and nay!

“JON AMEND-ALL  
of the Green Wood,  
And his jolly felloweship.

“Item, we have mo arrowes and goode hempen cord for 20  
otheres of your following.”

“Now, well-a-day for charity and the Christian  
graces!” cried Sir Oliver, lamentably. “Sirs, this  
is an ill world, and groweth daily worse. I will  
swear upon the cross of Holywood I am as innocent 25  
of that good knight’s hurt, whether in act or pur-  
pose, as the babe unchristened. Neither was his

---

LINE 16. by yea and nay: without any doubt.

## The Black Arrow

throat cut; for therein they are again in error, as there still live credible witnesses to show."

"It boots not, sir parson," said Bennet. "Here is unseasonable talk."

5 "Nay, Master Bennet, not so. Keep ye in your due place, good Bennet," answered the priest. "I shall make my innocence appear. I will upon no consideration lose my poor life in error. I take all men to witness that I am clear of this matter. I  
10 was not even in the Moat House. I was sent of an errand before nine upon the clock ——"

"Sir Oliver," said Hatch, interrupting, "since it please you not to stop this sermon, I will take other means. Goffe, sound to horse."

15 And while the tucket was sounding, Bennet moved close to the bewildered parson, and whispered violently in his ear.

Dick Shelton saw the priest's eye turned upon him for an instant in a startled glance. He had  
20 some cause for thought; for this Sir Harry Shelton was his own natural father. But he said never a word, and kept his countenance unmoved.

Hatch and Sir Oliver discussed together for awhile their altered situation; ten men, it was decided  
25 between them, should be reserved, not only to garrison the Moat House, but to escort the priest across the wood. In the meantime, as Bennet

---

LINE 15. **tucket**: a trumpet flourish.

## John Amend-All

was to remain behind, the command of the reinforcement was given to Master Shelton. Indeed, there was no choice; the men were loutish fellows, dull and unskilled in war, while Dick was not only popular, but resolute and grave beyond his age. Although his youth had been spent in these rough country places, the lad had been well taught in letters by Sir Oliver, and Hatch himself had shown him the management of arms and the first principles of command. Bennet had always been kind and helpful; he was one of those who are cruel as the grave to those they call their enemies, but ruggedly faithful and well-willing to their friends; and now, while Sir Oliver entered the next house to write, in his swift, exquisite penmanship, a memorandum of the last occurrences to his master, Sir Daniel Brackley, Bennet came up to his pupil to wish him God-speed upon his enterprise.

“Ye must go the long way about, Master Shelton,” he said, “round by the bridge, for your life! Keep a sure man fifty paces afore you, to draw shots; and go softly till y’ are past the wood. If the rogues fall upon you, ride for ’t; ye will do naught by standing. And keep ever forward, Master Shelton; turn me not back again, an ye love your life; there is no help in Tunstall, mind

---

LINE 3. *loutish*: awkward.

## The Black Arrow

ye that. And now, since ye go to the great wars about the king, and I continue to dwell here in extreme jeopardy of my life, and the saints alone can certify if we shall meet again below, I give you  
5 my last counsels now at your riding. Keep an eye on Sir Daniel; he is unsure. Put not your trust in the jack-priest; he intendeth not amiss, but doth the will of others; it is a hand-gun for Sir Daniel! Get you good lordship where ye go;  
10 make you strong friends; look to it. And think ever a paternoster-while on Bennet Hatch. There are worse rogues afoot than Bennet. So, God-speed!"

"And Heaven be with you, Bennet!" returned  
15 Dick. "Ye were a good friend to me-ward, and so I shall say ever."

"And, look ye, master," added Hatch, with a certain embarrassment, "if this Amend-All should get a shaft into me, ye might, mayhap, lay out a  
20 gold mark or mayhap a pound for my poor soul; for it is like to go stiff with me in purgatory."

"Ye shall have your will of it, Bennet," answered Dick. "But, what cheer, man! We shall meet again, where ye shall have more need of ale  
25 than masses."

"The saints so grant it, Master Dick!" returned the other. "But here comes Sir Oliver. An he

---

LINE 3. jeopardy: peril. 11. paternoster-while: length of time necessary to recite the Lord's Prayer.

## John Amend-All

were as quick with the long-bow as with the pen, he would be a brave man-at-arms."

Sir Oliver gave Dick a sealed packet, with this superscription: "To my ryght worchypful master, Sir Daniel Brackley, knyght, be thys delyvered in haste."

And Dick, putting it in the bosom of his jacket, gave the word and set forth westward up the village.



# BOOK I: THE TWO LADS

## CHAPTER I

### At the Sign of the Sun in Kettley

SIR DANIEL and his men lay in and about Kettley that night, warmly quartered and well patrolled. But the Knight of Tunstall was one who never rested from money-getting; and even now, when  
5 he was on the brink of an adventure which should make or mar him, he was up an hour after midnight to squeeze poor neighbors. He was one who traf-  
ficked greatly in disputed inheritances; it was his way to buy out the most unlikely claimant, and  
10 then, by the favor he curried with great lords about the king, procure unjust decisions in his favor; or, if that was too roundabout, to seize the dis-  
puted manor by force of arms, and rely on his influence and Sir Oliver's cunning in the law to hold  
15 what he had snatched. Kettley was one such place; it had come very lately into his clutches; he still met with opposition from the tenants; and it was to overawe discontent that he had led his troops that way.

---

LINE 7. trafficked: bartered.

## At the Sign of the Sun

By two in the morning, Sir Daniel sat in the inn room, close by the fireside, for it was cold at that hour among the fens of Kettleby. By his elbow stood a pottle of spiced ale. He had taken off his visored headpiece, and sat with his bald head and 5 thin, dark visage resting on one hand, wrapped warmly in a sanguine-colored cloak. At the lower end of the room about a dozen of his men stood sentry over the door or lay asleep on benches; and, somewhat nearer hand, a young lad, appar- 10 ently of twelve or thirteen, was stretched in a mantle on the floor. The host of the Sun stood before the great man.

“Now, mark me, mine host,” Sir Daniel said; “follow but mine orders, and I shall be your good 15 lord ever. I must have good men for head-boroughs, and I will have Adam-a-More high constable; see to it narrowly. If other men be chosen, it shall avail you nothing; rather it shall be found to your sore cost. For those that have paid rent 20 to Walsingham I shall take good measure — you among the rest, mine host.”

“Good knight,” said the host, “I will swear upon the cross of Holywood I did but pay to Walsingham upon compulsion. Nay, bully knight, I love not 25 the rogue Walsinghams; they were as poor as

---

LINE 3. **fens**: low, swampy lands. 4. **pottle**: tankard.  
5. **visored**: shielded by a front piece protecting the eyes.  
7. **sanguine-colored**: red. 25. **bully**: gallant.

## The Black Arrow

thieves, bully knight. Give me a great lord like you. Nay; ask me among the neighbors, I am stout for Brackley."

"It may be," said Sir Daniel, drily. "Ye shall  
5 then pay twice."

The innkeeper made a horrid grimace; but this was a piece of bad luck that might readily befall a tenant in these unruly times, and he was perhaps glad to make his peace so easily.

10 "Bring up yon fellow, Selden!" cried the knight.

And one of his retainers led up a poor, cringing old man, as pale as a candle, and all shaking with the fen fever.

"Sirrah," said Sir Daniel, "your name?"

15 "An't please your worship," replied the man, "my name is Condall — Condall of Shoreby, at your good worship's pleasure."

"I have heard you ill reported on," returned the knight. "Ye deal in treason, rogue; ye trudge the  
20 country leasing; y' are heavily suspicioned of the death of severals. How, fellow, are ye so bold? But I will bring you down."

"Right honorable and my reverend lord," the man cried, "here is some hodgepodge, saving  
25 your good presence. I am but a poor private man, and have hurt none."

"The under-sheriff did report of you most vilely,"

---

LINE 20. leasing: lying. 24. hodgepodge: mistake.

## At the Sign of the Sun

said the knight. "Seize me,' saith he, 'that Tyndal of Shoreby.'"

"Condall, my good lord; Condall is my poor name," said the unfortunate.

"Condall or Tyndal, it is all one," replied Sir Daniel, coolly. "For, by my sooth, y' are here, and I do mightily suspect your honesty. If you would save your neck, write me swiftly an obligation for twenty pound."

"For twenty pound, my good lord!" cried Condall. "Here is midsummer madness! My whole estate amounteth not to seventy shillings."

"Condall or Tyndal," returned Sir Daniel, grinning, "I will run my peril of that loss. Write me down twenty, and when I have recovered all I may, I will be good lord to you, and pardon you the rest."

"Alas! my good lord, it may not be; I have no skill to write," said Condall.

"Well-a-day!" returned the knight. "Here, then, is no remedy. Yet I would fain have spared you, Tyndal, had my conscience suffered. Selden, take me this old shrew softly to the nearest elm, and hang me him tenderly by the neck, where I may see him at my riding. Fare ye well, good Master Condall, dear Master Tyndal; y' are post-haste for Paradise; fare ye then well!"

"Nay, my right pleasant lord," replied Condall,

---

LINE 8. obligation: bond.



## The Black Arrow

forcing an obsequious smile, "an ye be so masterful, as doth right well become you, I will even, with all my poor skill, do your good bidding."

"Friend," quoth Sir Daniel, "ye will now write 5 two score. Go to! Y' are too cunning for a livelihood of seventy shillings. Selden, see him write me this in good form, and have it duly witnessed."

And Sir Daniel, who was a very merry knight, none merrier in England, took a drink of his mulled 10 ale, and lay back, smiling.

Meanwhile, the boy upon the floor began to stir, and presently sat up and looked about him with a scare.

"Hither," said Sir Daniel; and as the other rose 15 at his command and came slowly towards him, he leaned back and laughed outright. "By the rood!" he cried, "a sturdy boy!"

The lad flashed crimson with anger, and darted a look of hate out of his dark eyes. Now that he 20 was on his legs, it was more difficult to make certain of his age. His face looked somewhat older in expression, but it was as smooth as a young child's; and in bone and body he was unusually slender, and somewhat awkward of gait.

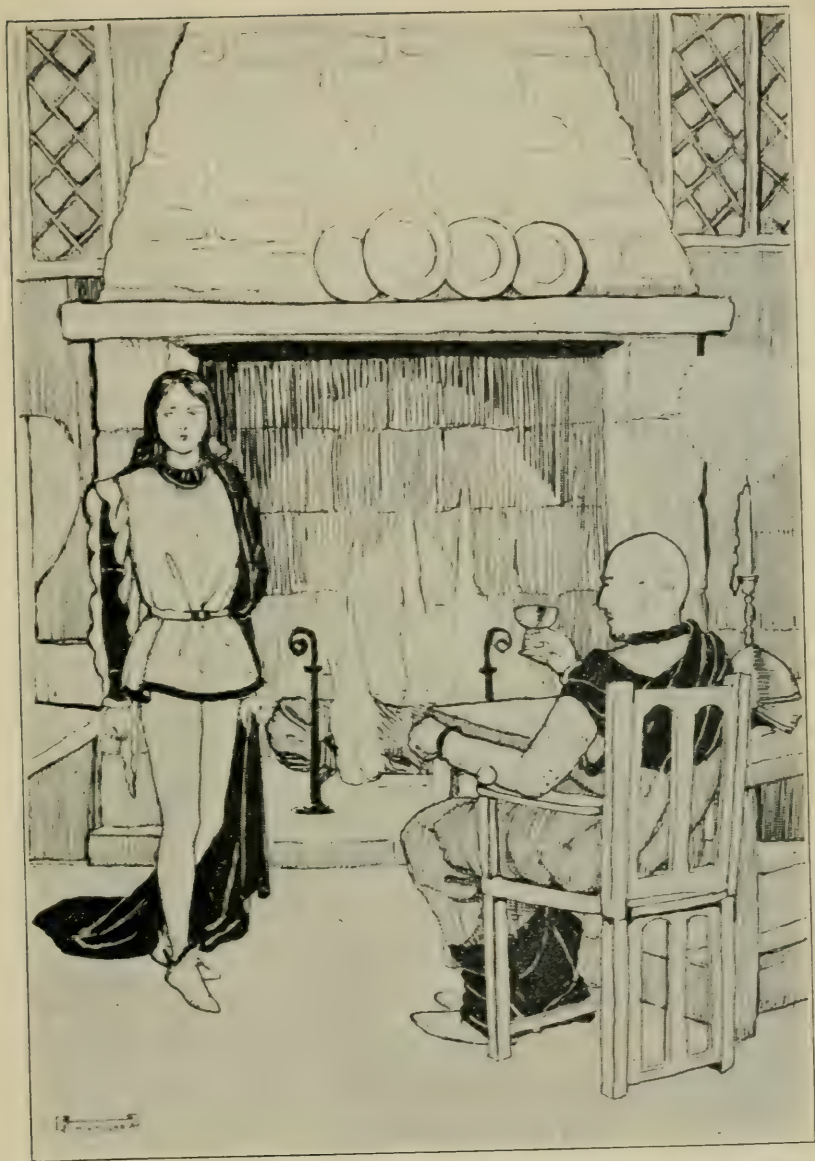
25 "Ye have called me, Sir Daniel," he said. "Was it to laugh at my poor plight?"

"Nay, now, let laugh," said the knight. "Good

---

LINE 9. **mulled**: heated, sweetened, and spiced.





“Ye have called me, Sir Daniel. Was it to laugh at my poor plight?”



## At the Sign of the Sun

shrew, let laugh, I pray you. An ye could see yourself, I warrant ye would laugh the first."

"Well," cried the lad, flushing, "ye shall answer this when ye answer for the other. Laugh while yet ye may!"

5

"Nay, now, good cousin," replied Sir Daniel, with some earnestness, "think not that I mock at you, except in mirth, as between kinsfolk and singular friends. I will make you a marriage of a thousand pounds, go to! and cherish you exceedingly. 10 I took you, indeed, roughly, as the time demanded; but from henceforth I shall ungrudgingly maintain and cheerfully serve you. Ye shall be Mrs. Shelton — Lady Shelton, by my troth! for the lad promiseth bravely. Tut! ye will not shy for 15 honest laughter; it purgeth melancholy. They are no rogues who laugh, good cousin. Good mine host, lay me a meal now for my cousin, Master John. Sit ye down, sweetheart and eat."

"Nay," said Master John, "I will break no bread. 20 Since ye force me to this sin, I will fast for my soul's interest. But, good mine host, I pray you of courtesy give me a cup of fair water; I shall be much beholden to your courtesy indeed."

"Ye shall have a dispensation, go to!" cried the 25 knight. "Shalt be well shriven, by my faith! Content you, then, and eat."

---

LINE 8. **singular**: special. 24. **beholden**: indebted.  
26. **shriven**: forgiven, after confessing a sin.

## The Black Arrow

But the lad was obstinate, drank a cup of water, and, once more wrapping himself closely in his mantle, sat in a far corner, brooding.

In an hour or two there rose a stir in the village  
5 of sentries challenging and the clatter of arms and horses; and then a troop drew up by the inn door, and Richard Shelton, splashed with mud, presented himself upon the threshold.

“Save you, Sir Daniel,” he said.

10 “How! Dickie Shelton!” cried the knight; and at the mention of Dick’s name the other lad looked curiously across. “What maketh Bennet Hatch?”

“Please you, sir knight, to take cognizance of this packet from Sir Oliver, wherein are all things  
15 fully stated,” answered Richard, presenting the priest’s letter. “And please you farther, ye were best make all speed to Risingham; for on the way hither we encountered one riding furiously with letters, and by his report, my Lord of Risingham  
20 was sore bested, and lacked exceedingly your presence.”

“How say you? Sore bested?” returned the knight. “Nay, then, we will make speed sitting down, good Richard. As the world goes in this  
25 poor realm of England, he that rides softliest rides surest. Delay, they say, begetteth peril; but it is rather this itch of doing that undoes men; mark

---

LINE 13. *cognizance*: notice. 20. *sore bested*: placed in a dangerous position.

## At the Sign of the Sun

it, Dick. But let me see, first, what cattle ye have brought. Selden, a link here at the door!"

And Sir Daniel strode forth into the village street, and, by the red glow of a torch, inspected his new troops. He was an unpopular neighbor and an unpopular master; but as a leader in war he was well beloved by those who rode behind his pennant. His dash, his proved courage, his forethought for the soldiers' comfort, even his rough gibes, were all to the taste of the bold blades in jack and salet. 10

"Nay, by the rood!" he cried, "what poor dogs are these? Here be some as crooked as a bow, and some as lean as a spear. Friends, ye shall ride in the front of the battle; I can spare you, friends. Mark me this old villain on the piebald! A two-15 year mutton riding on a hog would look more soldierly! Ha! Clipsby, are ye there, old rat? Y' are a man I could lose with a good heart; ye shall go in front of all, with a bull's-eye painted on your jack, to be the better butt for archery; sirrah, ye shall 20 show me the way."

"I will show you any way, Sir Daniel, but the way to change sides," returned Clipsby, sturdily.

Sir Daniel laughed a guffaw.

"Why, well said!" he cried. "Hast a shrewd 25 tongue in thy mouth, go to! I will forgive you

---

LINE 2. link: torch of pitch. 11. rood: cross. 15. piebald: a horse of mottled color. 24. guffaw: a shout of coarse laughter.



## The Black Arrow

for that merry word. Selden, see them fed, both man and brute."

The knight re-entered the inn.

"Now, friend Dick," he said, "fall to. Here is  
5 good ale and bacon. Eat, while that I read."

Sir Daniel opened the packet, and as he read his brow darkened. When he had done he sat a little, musing. Then he looked sharply at his ward.

"Dick," said he, "y' have seen this penny  
10 rhyme?"

The lad replied in the affirmative.

"It bears your father's name," continued the knight; "and our poor shrew of a parson is, by some mad soul, accused of slaying him."

15 "He did most eagerly deny it," answered Dick.

"He did?" cried the knight, very sharply. "Heed him not. He has a loose tongue; he babbles like a jack-sparrow. Some day, when I may find the leisure, Dick, I will myself more fully  
20 inform you of these matters. There was one Duckworth shrewdly blamed for it; but the times were troubled, and there was no justice to be got."

"It befell at the Moat House?" Dick ventured, with a beating at his heart.

25 "It befell between the Moat House and Holywood," replied Sir Daniel, calmly; but he shot a covert glance, black with suspicion, at Dick's face.

---

LINE 27. **covert**: secret.

## At the Sign of the Sun

“And now,” added the knight, “speed you with your meal; ye shall return to Tunstall with a line from me.”

Dick's face fell sorely.

“Prithee, Sir Daniel,” he cried, “send one of the 5  
villains! I beseech you let me to the battle. I can strike a stroke, I promise you.”

“I misdoubt it not,” replied Sir Daniel, sitting down to write. “But here, Dick, is no honor to be won. I lie in Kettley till I have sure tidings of 10  
the war, and then ride to join me with the conqueror. Cry not on cowardice; it is but wisdom, Dick; for this poor realm so tosseth with rebellion, and the king's name and custody so changeth hands, that no man may be certain of the morrow. Toss- 15  
pot and Shuttle-wit run in, but my Lord Good-Counsel sits o' one side, waiting.”

With that, Sir Daniel, turning his back to Dick, and quite at the farther end of the long table, began to write his letter, with his mouth on one side, for 20  
this business of the Black Arrow stuck sorely in his throat.

Meanwhile, young Shelton was going on heartily enough with his breakfast, when he felt a touch upon his arm, and a very soft voice whispering in 25  
his ear.

“Make not a sign, I do beseech you,” said the

---

LINE 5. Prithee: I pray thee. 6. villains: serfs.

## The Black Arrow

voice, "but of your charity teach me the straight way to Holywood. Beseech you, now, good boy, comfort a poor soul in peril and extreme distress, and set me so far forth upon the way to my repose."

5 "Take the path by the windmill," answered Dick, in the same tone. "It will bring you to Till Ferry; there inquire again."

And without turning his head, he fell again to eating. But with the tail of his eye he caught a  
10 glimpse of the young lad called Master John stealthily creeping from the room.

"Why," thought Dick, "he is as young as I. 'Good boy' doth he call me? An I had known, I should have seen the varlet hanged ere I had told  
15 him. Well, if he goes through the fen, I may come up with him and pull his ears."

Half an hour later, Sir Daniel gave Dick the letter, and bade him speed to the Moat House. And again, some half an hour after Dick's departure,  
20 a messenger came, in hot haste, from my Lord of Risingham.

"Sir Daniel," the messenger said, "ye lose great honor, by my sooth! The fight began again this morning ere the dawn, and we have beaten their  
25 van and scattered their right wing. Only the main battle standeth fast. An we had your fresh men, we should tilt you them all into the river. What,

---

LINE 14. *varlet*: worthless fellow. 25. *van*: the advance-guard of an army.

## At the Sign of the Sun

sir knight! Will ye be the last? It stands not with your good credit."

"Nay," cried the knight, "I was but now upon the march. Selden, sound me the tucket. Sir, I am with you on the instant. It is not two hours 5 since the more part of my command came in, sir messenger. What would ye have? Spurring is good meat, but yet it killed the charger. Bustle, boys!"

By this time the tucket was sounding cheerily 10 in the morning, and from all sides Sir Daniel's men poured into the main street and formed before the inn. They had slept upon their arms, with chargers saddled, and in ten minutes five score men-at-arms and archers, cleanly equipped and briskly disci- 15 plined, stood ranked and ready. The chief part were in Sir Daniel's livery, murrey and blue, which gave the greater show to their array. The best armed rode first; and away out of sight, at the tail of the column, came the sorry reinforce- 20 ment of the night before. Sir Daniel looked with pride along the line.

"Here be the lads to serve you in a pinch," he said.

"They are pretty men, indeed," replied the mes- 25 senger. "It but augments my sorrow that ye had not marched the earlier."

---

LINE 17. **murrey**: reddish brown.



## The Black Arrow

“Well,” said the knight, “what would ye? The beginning of a feast and the end of a fray, sir messenger,” and he mounted into his saddle. “Why! how now!” he cried. “John! Joanna! Nay, 5 by the sacred rood! where is she? Host, where is that girl?”

“Girl, Sir Daniel?” cried the landlord. “Nay, sir, I saw no girl.”

“Boy, then, dotard!” cried the knight. “Could 10 ye not see it was a wench? She in the murrey-colored mantle — she that broke her fast with water, rogue — where is she?”

“Nay, the saints bless us! Master John, ye called him,” said the host. “Well, I thought none 15 evil. He is gone. I saw him — her — I saw her in the stable a good hour ago; ’a was saddling a grey horse.”

“Now, by the rood!” cried Sir Daniel, “the wench was worth five hundred pound to me and 20 more.”

“Sir knight,” observed the messenger, with bitterness, “while that ye are here, roaring for five hundred pounds, the realm of England is elsewhere being lost and won.”

25 “It is well said,” replied Sir Daniel. “Selden, fall me out with six crossbowmen; hunt me her down. I care not what it cost; but at my return-

---

LINE 9. dotard: fool.

## At the Sign of the Sun

ing, let me find her at the Moat House. Be it upon your head. And now, sir messenger, we march.”

And the troop broke into a good trot, and Selden and his six men were left behind upon the street of Kettley, with the staring villagers.

## CHAPTER II

### In the Fen

It was near six in the May morning when Dick began to ride down into the fen upon his homeward way. The sky was all blue; the jolly wind blew loud and steady; the windmill sails were spinning; 5 and the willows over all the fen rippling and whitening like a field of corn. He had been all night in the saddle, but his heart was good and his body sound, and he rode right merrily.

The path went down and down into the marsh, 10 till he lost sight of all the neighboring landmarks but Kettley windmill on the knoll behind him, and the extreme top of Tunstall Forest far before. On either hand there were great fields of blowing reeds and willows, pools of water shaking in the wind, 15 and treacherous bogs, as green as emerald, to tempt and to betray the traveller. The path lay almost straight through the morass. It was already very ancient; its foundation had been laid by Roman soldiery; in the lapse of ages much of it had sunk, 20 and every here and there, for a few hundred yards,

---

LINE 15. bogs: wet and spongy ground. 17. morass: swamp.

## In the Fen

it lay submerged below the stagnant waters of the fen.

About a mile from Kettley, Dick came to one such break in the plain line of causeway, where the reeds and willows grew dispersedly like little islands 5 and confused the eye. The gap, besides was more than usually long; it was a place where any stranger might come readily to mischief; and Dick be- thought him, with something like a pang, of the lad whom he had so imperfectly directed. As for 10 himself, one look backward to where the windmill sails were turning black against the blue of heaven — one look forward to the high ground of Tunstall Forest, and he was sufficiently directed and held straight on, the water washing to his horse's knees, 15 as safe as on a highway.

Half-way across, and when he had already sighted the path rising high and dry upon the farther side, he was aware of a great splashing on his right, and saw a grey horse, sunk to its belly in the mud, and 20 still spasmodically struggling. Instantly, as though it had divined the neighborhood of help, the poor beast began to neigh most piercingly. It rolled, meanwhile, a bloodshot eye, insane with terror; and as it sprawled wallowing in the quag, clouds of 25 stinging insects rose and buzzed about it in the air.

“Alack!” thought Dick, “can the poor lad have

---

LINE 4. **causeway**: raised road over marshy ground.  
25. **quag**: wet lowlands.



## The Black Arrow

perished? There is his horse, for certain — a brave grey! Nay, comrade, if thou criest to me so piteously, I will do all man can to help thee. Shalt not lie there to drown by inches!”

5 And he made ready his crossbow, and put a quarrel through the creature's head.

Dick rode on after this act of rugged mercy, somewhat sobered in spirit, and looking closely about him for any sign of his less happy predecessor  
10 in the way.

“I would I had dared to tell him further,” he thought; “for I fear he has miscarried in the slough.”

And just as he was so thinking, a voice cried  
15 upon his name from the causeway side, and looking over his shoulder, he saw the lad's face peering from a clump of reeds.

“Are ye there?” he said, reining in. “Ye lay so close among the reeds that I had passed you by.  
20 I saw your horse bemired, and put him from his agony; which, by my sooth! an ye had been a more merciful rider ye had done yourself. But come forth out of your hiding. Here be none to trouble you.”

25 “Nay, good boy, I have no arms, nor skill to use them if I had,” replied the other, stepping forth upon the pathway.

“Why call me ‘boy’?” cried Dick. “Y' are not, I trow, the elder of us twain.”

## In the Fen

“Good Master Shelton,” said the other, “prithee forgive me. I have none the least intention to offend. Rather I would in every way beseech your gentleness and favor, for I am now worse bested than ever, having lost my way, my cloak, and my 5 poor horse. To have a riding-rod and spurs, and never a horse to sit upon! And before all,” he added, looking ruefully upon his clothes — “before all, to be so sorrily besmirched!”

“Tut!” cried Dick. “Would ye mind a duck- 10 ing? Blood of wound or dust of travel — that’s a man’s adornment.”

“Nay, then, I like him better plain,” observed the lad. “But, prithee, how shall I do? Prithee, good Master Richard, help me with your good 15 counsel. If I come not safe to Holywood, I am undone.”

“Nay,” said Dick, dismounting, “I will give more than counsel. Take my horse, and I will run awhile, and when I am weary we shall change 20 again, that so, riding and running, both may go the speedier.”

So the change was made, and they went forward as briskly as they durst on the uneven causeway, Dick with his hand upon the other’s knee. 25

“How call ye your name?” asked Dick.

“Call me John Matcham,” replied the lad.

---

LINE 9. besmirched: soiled.

## The Black Arrow

“And what make ye to Holywood?” Dick continued.

“I seek sanctuary from a man that would oppress me,” was the answer. “The good Abbot of Holywood is a strong pillar to the weak.”

“And how came ye with Sir Daniel, Master Matcham?” pursued Dick.

“Nay,” cried the other, “by the abuse of force! He hath taken me by violence from my own place; dressed me in these weeds; ridden with me till my heart was sick; gibed me till I could 'a' wept; and when certain of my friends pursued, thinking to have me back, claps me in the rear to stand their shot! I was even grazed in the right foot, and walk but lamely. Nay, there shall come a day between us; he shall smart for all!”

“Would ye shoot at the moon with a hand-gun?” said Dick. “'Tis a valiant knight, and hath a hand of iron. An he guessed I had made or meddled with your flight, it would go sore with me.”

“Ay, poor boy,” returned the other, “y' are his ward, I know it. By the same token, so am I, or so he saith; or else he hath bought my marriage — I wot not rightly which; but it is some handle to oppress me by.”

“Boy again!” said Dick.

“Nay, then, shall I call you girl, good Richard?” asked Matcham.

---

LINE 10. weeds: clothes. 11. gibed: ridiculed.

## In the Fen

"Never a girl for me," returned Dick. "I do abjure the crew of them!"

"Ye speak boyishly," said the other. "Ye think more of them than ye pretend."

"Not I," said Dick, stoutly. "They come not <sup>5</sup> in my mind. A plague of them, say I! Give me to hunt and to fight and to feast, and to live with jolly foresters. I never heard of a maid yet that was for any service, save one only; and she, poor shrew, was burned for a witch and the wearing of <sup>10</sup> men's clothes in spite of nature."

Master Matcham crossed himself with fervor, and appeared to pray.

"What make ye?" Dick inquired.

"I pray for her spirit," answered the other, with <sup>15</sup> a somewhat troubled voice.

"For a witch's spirit?" Dick cried. "But pray for her, and ye list; she was the best wench in Europe, was this Joan of Arc. Old Appleyard the archer ran from her, he said, as if she had been <sup>20</sup> Mahoun. Nay, she was a brave wench."

"Well, but, good Master Richard," resumed Matcham, "an ye like maids so little, y' are no true natural man; for God made them <sup>25</sup> twain by intention, and brought true love into the world, to be man's hope and woman's comfort."

"Faugh!" said Dick. "Y' are a milk-sopping

---

LINE 2. **abjure**: renounce. 21. **Mahoun**: an evil spirit.



## The Black Arrow

baby, so to harp on women. An ye think I be no true man, get down upon the path, and whether at fists, backsword, or bow and arrow, I will prove my manhood on your body."

5 "Nay, I am no fighter," said Matcham, eagerly. "I meant no tittle of offense. I meant but pleasantry. And if I talk of women, it is because I heard ye were to marry."

"I to marry!" Dick exclaimed. "Well, it is the  
10 first I hear of it. And with whom was I to marry?"

"One Joan Sedley," replied Matcham, coloring. "It was Sir Daniel's doing; he hath money to gain upon both sides; and, indeed, I have heard the poor wench bemoaning herself pitifully of the  
15 match. It seems she is of your mind, or else distasted to the bridegroom."

"Well! marriage is like death, it comes to all," said Dick, with resignation. "And she bemoaned herself? I pray ye now, see there how shuttle-  
20 witted are these girls: to bemoan herself before that she had seen me? Do I bemoan myself? Not I. An I be to marry, I will marry dry-eyed! But if ye know her, prithee, of what favor is she? fair or foul? And is she shrewish or pleasant?"

25 "Nay, what matters it?" said Matcham. "An y' are to marry, ye can but marry. What matters foul or fair? These be but toys. Y' are no

---

LINE 6. *tittle of offense*: the least offense.

## In the Fen

milksop, Master Richard; ye will wed with dry eyes, anyhow."

"It is well said," replied Shelton. "Little I reck."

"Your lady wife is like to have a pleasant lord,"<sup>5</sup> said Matcham.

"She shall have the lord Heaven made her for," returned Dick. "I trow there be worse as well as better."

"Ay, the poor wench!" cried the other. 10

"And why so poor?" asked Dick.

"To wed a man of wood," replied his companion.

"O me, for a wooden husband!"

"I think I be a man of wood, indeed," said Dick, "to trudge afoot the while you ride my horse;<sup>15</sup> but it is good wood, I trow."

"Good Dick, forgive me," cried the other.

"Nay, y' are the best heart in England; I but laughed. Forgive me now, sweet Dick."

"Nay, no fool words," returned Dick, a little<sup>20</sup> embarrassed by his companion's warmth. "No harm is done. I am not touchy, praise the saints."

And at that moment the wind, which was blowing straight behind them as they went, brought them the rough flourish of Sir Daniel's trumpeter.<sup>25</sup>

"Hark!" said Dick, "the tucket soundeth."

"Ay," said Matcham, "they have found my

---

LINE 4. **reck**: care. 8. **trow**: suppose.

## The Black Arrow

flight, and now I am unhorsed!" and he became pale as death.

"Nay, what cheer!" returned Dick. "Y' have a long start, and we are near the ferry. And it is  
5 I, methinks, that am unhorsed."

"Alack, I shall be taken!" cried the fugitive. "Dick, kind Dick, beseech ye help me but a little!"

"Why, now, what aileth thee?" said Dick. "Methinks I help you very patently. But my  
10 heart is sorry for so spiritless a fellow! And see ye here, John Matcham — sith John Matcham is your name — I, Richard Shelton, tide what betideth, come what may, will see you safe in Hollywood. The saints so do to me again if I de-  
15 fault you. Come, pick me up a good heart, Sir Whiteface. The way betters here; spur me the horse. Go faster! faster! Nay, mind not for me; I can run like a deer."

So, with the horse trotting hard, and Dick run-  
20 ning easily alongside, they crossed the remainder of the fen, and came out upon the banks of the river by the ferryman's hut.

---

LINE 9. *patently*: manifestly. 11. *sith*: since. 12. *tide what betideth*: whatever may befall. 14. *default*: fail.

## CHAPTER III

### The Fen Ferry

THE river Till was a wide, sluggish, clayey water, oozing out of fens, and in this part of its course it strained among some score of willow-covered, marshy islets.

It was a dingy stream; but upon this bright, <sup>5</sup> spirited morning everything was become beautiful. The wind and the martens broke it up into innumerable dimples; and the reflection of the sky was scattered over all the surface in crumbs of smiling blue. 10

A creek ran up to meet the path, and close under the bank the ferryman's hut lay snugly. It was of wattle and clay, and the grass grew green upon the roof.

Dick went to the door and opened it. Within, <sup>15</sup> upon a foul old russet cloak, the ferryman lay stretched and shivering; a great hulk of a man, but lean and shaken by the country fever.

"Hey, Master Shelton," he said, "be ye for the ferry? Ill times, ill times! Look to yourself. <sup>20</sup>

---

LINE 7. **martens**: weasel-like animals. 13. **wattle**: interwoven twigs.



## The Black Arrow

There is a fellowship abroad. Ye were better turn round on your two heels and try the bridge."

"Nay; time's in the saddle," answered Dick. "Time will ride, Hugh Ferryman. I am hot in  
5 haste."

"A wilful man!" returned the ferryman, rising. "An ye win safe to the Moat House, y' have done lucky; but I say no more." And then catching sight of Matcham, "Who be this?" he asked, as  
10 he paused, blinking, on the threshold of his cabin.

"It is my kinsman, Master Matcham," answered Dick.

"Give ye good day, good ferryman," said Matcham, who had dismounted, and now came  
15 forward, leading the horse. "Launch me your boat, I prithee; we are sore in haste."

The gaunt ferryman continued staring.

"By the mass!" he cried at length, and laughed with open throat.

20 Matcham colored to his neck and winced; and Dick, with an angry countenance, put his hand on the lout's shoulder.

"How now, churl!" he cried. "Fall to thy business, and leave mocking thy betters."

25 Hugh Ferryman grumblingly undid his boat, and shoved it a little forth into the deep water. Then Dick led in the horse, and Matcham followed.

---

LINE 22. lout's: a lout is an ill bred fellow.

## The Fen Ferry

“Ye be mortal small made, master,” said Hugh, with a wide grin; “something o’ the wrong model, belike. Nay, Master Shelton, I am for you,” he added, getting to his oars. “A cat may look at a king. I did but take a shot of the eye at Master 5 Matcham.”

“Sirrah, no more words,” said Dick. “Bend me your back.”

They were by that time at the mouth of the creek, and the view opened up and down the river. 10 Everywhere it was enclosed with islands. Clay banks were falling in, willows nodding, reeds waving, martens dipping and piping. There was no sign of man in the labyrinth of waters.

“My master,” said the ferryman, keeping the 15 boat steady with one oar, “I have a shrewd guess that John-a-Fenne is on the island. He bears me a black grudge to all Sir Daniel’s. How if I turned me up stream and landed you an arrow-flight above the path? Ye were best not meddle with John 20 Fenne.”

“How, then? Is he of this company?” asked Dick.

“Nay, mum is the word,” said Hugh. “But I would go up water, Dick. How if Master Matcham 25 came by an arrow?” and he laughed again.

“Be it so, Hugh,” answered Dick.

“Look ye, then,” pursued Hugh. “Sith it shall so be, unsling me your crossbow — so: now make

## The Black Arrow

it ready — good; place me a quarrel. Ay, keep it so, and look upon me grimly.”

“What meaneth this?” asked Dick.

“Why, my master, if I steal you across, it must be under force or fear,” replied the ferryman; “for else, if John Fenne got wind of it, he were like to prove my most distressful neighbor.”

“Do these churls ride so roughly?” Dick inquired. “Do they command Sir Daniel’s own  
10 ferry?”

“Nay,” whispered the ferryman, winking. “Mark me! Sir Daniel shall down. His time is out. He shall down. Mum!” And he bent over his oars.

15 They pulled a long way up the river, turned the tail of an island, and came softly down a narrow channel next the opposite bank. Then Hugh held water in mid-stream.

“I must land you here among the willows,” he  
20 said.

“Here is no path but willow swamps and quagmires,” answered Dick.

“Master Shelton,” replied Hugh, “I dare not take ye nearer down, for your own sake now. He  
25 watcheth me the ferry, lying on his bow. All that go by and owe Sir Daniel good will, he shooteth down like rabbits. I heard him swear it by

---

LINE 21. quagmires: marshy ground.

## The Fen Ferry

the rood. An I had not known you of old days — ay, and from so high upward — I would 'a' let you go on; but for old days' remembrance, and because ye had this toy with you that's not fit for wounds or warfare, I did risk my two poor ears to have you over whole. Content you; I can no more, on my salvation!"

Hugh was still speaking, lying on his oars, when there came a great shout from among the willows on the island, and sounds followed as of a strong man breasting roughly through the wood.

"A murrain!" cried Hugh. "He was on the upper island all the while!" He pulled straight for shore. "Threat me with your bow, good Dick; threat me with it plain," he added. "I have tried to save your skins, save you mine!"

The boat ran into a tough thicket of willows with a crash. Matcham, pale, but steady and alert at a sign from Dick, ran along the thwarts and leaped ashore; Dick, taking the horse by the bridle, sought to follow, but what with the animal's bulk, and what with the closeness of the thicket, both stuck fast. The horse neighed and trampled; and the boat, which was swinging in an eddy, came on and off and pitched with violence.

"It may not be, Hugh; here is no landing,"

---

LINE 12. *murrain*: plague (take you). 19. *thwarts*: oarsmen's seats.



## The Black Arrow

cried Dick ; but he still struggled valiantly with the obstinate thicket and the startled animal.

A tall man appeared upon the shore of the island, a long-bow in his hand. Dick saw him for an instant, with the corner of his eye, bending the bow with a great effort, his face crimson with hurry.

“Who goes?” he shouted. “Hugh, who goes?”

“’Tis Master Shelton, John,” replied the ferryman.

10 “Stand, Dick Shelton!” bawled the man upon the island. “Ye shall have no hurt, upon the rood ! Stand ! Back out, Hugh Ferryman.”

Dick cried a taunting answer.

15 “Nay, then, ye shall go afoot,” returned the man ; and he let drive an arrow.

The horse, struck by the shaft, lashed out in agony and terror ; the boat capsized, and next moment all were struggling in the eddies of the river.

20 When Dick came up, he was within a yard of the bank ; and before his eyes were clear, his hand had closed on something firm and strong that instantly began to drag him forward. It was the riding-rod, that Matcham, crawling forth upon an overhanging  
25 willow, had opportunely thrust into his grasp.

“By the mass !” cried Dick, as he was helped ashore, “that makes a life I owe you. I swim like a cannon-ball.” And he turned instantly towards the island.

## The Fen Ferry

Midway over, Hugh Ferryman was swimming with his upturned boat, while John-a-Fenne, furious at the ill-fortune of his shot, bawled to him to hurry.

“Come, Jack,” said Shelton, “run for it! Ere Hugh can hale his barge across, or the pair of ’em s can get it righted, we may be out of cry.”



“His hand had closed on something firm and strong.”

And adding example to his words, he began to run, dodging among the willows, and in marshy places leaping from tussock to tussock. He had no time to look for his direction; all he could do was to turn his back upon the river, and put all his heart to running.

---

LINE 9. **tussock**: clump of grass.

## The Black Arrow

Presently, however, the ground began to rise, which showed him he was still in the right way, and soon after they came forth upon a slope of solid turf, where elms began to mingle with the willows.

5 But here Matcham, who had been dragging far into the rear, threw himself fairly down.

“Leave me, Dick!” he cried, pantingly. “I can no more.”

Dick turned, and came back to where his com-  
10 panion lay.

“Nay, Jack, leave thee!” he cried. “That were a knave’s trick, to be sure, when ye risked a shot and a ducking, ay, and a drowning too, to save my life. Drowning, in sooth; for why I did  
15 not pull you in along with me, the saints alone can tell!”

“Nay,” said Matcham, “I would ’a’ saved us both, good Dick, for I can swim.”

“Can ye so?” cried Dick, with open eyes. It  
20 was the one manly accomplishment of which he was himself incapable. In the order of the things that he admired, next to having killed a man in single fight came swimming. “Well,” he said, “here is a lesson to despise no man. I promised to  
25 care for you as far as Holywood, and, by the rood, Jack, y’ are more capable to care for me.”

“Well, Dick, we’re friends now,” said Matcham.

“Nay, I never was unfriends,” answered Dick. “Y’ are a brave lad in your way, albeit something

## The Fen Ferry

of a milksop, too. I never met your like before this day. But, prithee, fetch back your breath, and let us on. Here is no place for chatter."

"My foot hurts shrewdly," said Matcham.

"Nay, I had forgot your foot," returned Dick. <sup>s</sup>  
"Well, we must go the gentlier. I would I knew rightly where we were. I have clean lost the path; yet that may be for the better, too. An they watch the ferry, they watch the path, belike, as well. I would Sir Daniel were back with two score <sup>10</sup> men; he would sweep me these rascals as the wind sweeps leaves. Come, Jack, lean ye on my shoulder, ye poor shrew. Nay, y' are not tall enough. What age are ye, for a wager? — twelve?"

15

"Nay, I am sixteen," said Matcham.

"Y' are poorly grown to height then," answered Dick. "But take my hand. We shall go softly, never fear. I owe you a life; I am a good repayer, Jack, of good or evil."

20

They began to go forward up the slope.

"We must hit the road, early or late," continued Dick; "and then for a fresh start. By the mass! but y' 'ave a rickety hand, Jack. If I had a hand like that, I would think shame. I tell you," <sup>25</sup>  
he went on, with a sudden chuckle, "I swear by the mass I believe Hugh Ferryman took you for a maid."

"Nay, never!" cried the other, coloring high.



## The Black Arrow

“’A did, though, for a wager!” Dick exclaimed. “Small blame to him. Ye look liker maid than man; and I tell ye more — y’ are a strange-looking rogue for a boy; but for a hussy, Jack, ye would  
5 be right fair — ye would. Ye would be well-favored for a wench.”

“Well,” said Matcham, “ye know right well that I am none.”

“Nay, I know that; I do but jest,” said Dick.  
10 “Ye’ll be a man before your mother, Jack. What cheer, my bully! Ye shall strike shrewd strokes. Now, which, I marvel, of you or me, shall be first knighted, Jack? for knighted I shall be, or die for ’t. ‘Sir Richard Shelton, Knight’: it soundeth  
15 bravely. But ‘Sir John Matcham’ soundeth not amiss.”

“Prithee, Dick, stop till I drink,” said the other, pausing where a little clear spring welled out of the slope into a graveled basin no bigger  
20 than a pocket. “And O, Dick, if I might come by anything to eat! — my very heart aches with hunger.”

“Why, fool, did ye not eat at Kettle?” asked Dick.

25 “I had made a vow — it was a sin I had been led into,” stammered Matcham; “but now, if it were but dry bread, I would eat it greedily.”

“Sit ye, then, and eat,” said Dick, “while that I scout a little forward for the road.” And he

## The Fen Ferry

took a wallet from his girdle, wherein were bread and pieces of dry bacon, and, while Matcham fell heartily to, struck farther forth among the trees.

A little beyond there was a dip in the ground, where a streamlet soaked among dead leaves; and 5 beyond that, again, the trees were better grown and stood wider, and oak and beech began to take the place of willow and elm. The continued tossing and pouring of the wind among the leaves sufficiently concealed the sounds of his footsteps on 10 the mast; it was for the ear what a moonless night is to the eye; but for all that Dick went cautiously, slipping from one big trunk to another, and looking sharply about him as he went. Suddenly a doe passed like a shadow through the underwood in 15 front of him, and he paused, disgusted at the chance. This part of the wood had been certainly deserted, but now that the poor deer had run, she was like a messenger he should have sent before him to announce his coming; and instead of pushing further, 20 he turned him to the nearest well-grown tree, and rapidly began to climb.

Luck had served him well. The oak on which he had mounted was one of the tallest in that quarter of the wood, and easily out-topped its 25 neighbors by a fathom and a half; and when Dick had clambered into the topmost fork and clung

---

LINE 1. **wallet**: a leather bag.

## The Black Arrow

there, swinging dizzily in the great wind, he saw behind him the whole fenny plain as far as Kettleby, and the Till wandering among woody islets, and in front of him the white line of high-road winding  
5 through the forest. The boat had been righted — it was even now midway on the ferry. Beyond that there was no sign of man, nor aught moving but the wind. He was about to descend, when, taking a last view, his eye lit upon a string of mov-  
10 ing points about the middle of the fen. Plainly a small troop was threading the causeway, and that at a good pace; and this gave him some concern as he shinned vigorously down the trunk and returned across the wood for his companion.

---

LINE 2. **fenny**: boggy.

## CHAPTER IV

### A Greenwood Company

MATCHAM was well rested and revived; and the two lads, winged by what Dick had seen, hurried through the remainder of the outwood, crossed the road in safety, and began to mount into the high ground of Tunstall Forest. The trees grew more and more in groves, with heathy places in between, sandy, gorsy, and dotted with old yews. The ground became more and more uneven, full of pits and hillocks. And with every step of the ascent the wind still blew the shriller, and the trees bent 10 before the gusts like fishing-rods.

They had just entered one of the clearings, when Dick suddenly clapped down upon his face among the brambles, and began to crawl slowly backward towards the shelter of the grove. Matcham, in 15 great bewilderment, for he could see no reason for this flight, still imitated his companion's course; and it was not until they had gained the harbor of a thicket that he turned and begged him to explain. 20

---

LINE 6. **heathy**: covered with evergreen shrubs. 7. **gorsy**: full of thick, prickly shrubs.



## The Black Arrow

For all reply, Dick pointed with his finger.

At the far end of the clearing, a fir grew high above the neighboring wood, and planted its black shock of foliage clear against the sky. For about 5 fifty feet above the ground the trunk grew straight and solid like a column. At that level, it split into two massive boughs; and in the fork, like a mast-headed seaman, there stood a man in a green tabard, spying far and wide. The sun glistened 10 upon his hair; with one hand he shaded his eyes to look abroad, and he kept slowly rolling his head from side to side with the regularity of a machine.

The lads exchanged glances.

“Let us try to the left,” said Dick. “We had 15 near fallen foully, Jack.”

Ten minutes afterwards they struck into a beaten path.

“Here is a piece of forest that I know not,” Dick remarked. “Where goeth me this track?”

20 “Let us even try,” said Matcham.

A few yards further the path came to the top of a ridge and began to go down abruptly into a cup-shaped hollow. At the foot, out of a thick wood of flowering hawthorn, two or three roofless gables, 25 blackened as if by fire, and a single tall chimney marked the ruins of a house.

“What may this be?” whispered Matcham.

---

LINE 9. **tabard**: a sleeveless or short-sleeved coat, worn usually over armor. 15. **fallen foully**: fallen into danger.

## A Greenwood Company

“Nay, by the mass, I know not,” answered Dick.  
“I am all at sea. Let us go warily.”

With beating hearts, they descended through the hawthorns. Here and there they passed signs of recent cultivation: fruit-trees and pot-herbs<sup>5</sup> ran wild among the thicket; a sun-dial had fallen in the grass; it seemed they were treading what once had been a garden. Yet a little farther and they came forth before the ruins of the house.

It had been a pleasant mansion and a strong.<sup>10</sup>  
A dry ditch was dug deep about it; but it was now choked with masonry, and bridged by a fallen rafter. The two farther walls still stood, the sun shining through their empty windows; but the remainder of the building had collapsed, and now<sup>15</sup> lay in a great cairn of ruin, grimed with fire. Already in the interior a few plants were springing green among the chinks.

“Now I bethink me,” whispered Dick, “this must be Grimstone. It was a hold of one Simon<sup>20</sup> Malmesbury; Sir Daniel was his bane! ’Twas Bennet Hatch that burned it, now five years ago. In sooth, ’t was pity, for it was a fair house.”

Down in the hollow, where no wind blew, it was both warm and still, and Matcham, laying one hand<sup>25</sup> upon Dick’s arm, held up a warning finger.

“Hist!” he said.

---

LINE 2. **warily**: cautiously. 16. **cairn of ruin**: a heap of fallen stones. 21. **was his bane**: caused his destruction.

## The Black Arrow

Then came a strange sound, breaking on the quiet. It was twice repeated ere they recognized its nature. It was the sound of a big man clearing his throat; and just then a hoarse, untuneful voice  
5 broke into singing :

“Then up and spake the master, the king of the outlaws :  
‘What make ye here, my merry men, among the green-  
wood shaws?’

And Gamelyn made answer — he looked never adown :

‘O, they must need to walk in wood that may not walk in  
town!’ ”

10 The singer paused, a faint clink of iron followed, and then silence.

The two lads stood looking at each other. Whoever he might be, their invisible neighbor was just beyond the ruin. And suddenly the color came  
15 into Matcham’s face, and next moment he had crossed the fallen rafter, and was climbing cautiously on the huge pile of lumber that filled the interior of the roofless house. Dick would have withheld him, had he been in time; as it was, he  
20 was fain to follow.

Right in the corner of the ruin, two rafters had fallen crosswise, and protected a clear space no larger than a pew in church. Into this the lads silently lowered themselves. There they were  
25 perfectly concealed, and through a narrow loophole commanded a view upon the farther side.

---

LINE 7. **shaws**: thickets.

## A Greenwood Company

Peering through this, they were struck stiff with terror at their predicament. To retreat was impossible; they scarce dared to breathe. Upon the very margin of the ditch, not thirty feet from where they crouched, an iron caldron bubbled<sup>5</sup> and steamed above a glowing fire; and close by, in an attitude of listening, as though he had caught some sound of their clambering among the ruins, a tall, red-faced, battered-looking man stood poised, an iron spoon in his right hand, a horn and a formidable<sup>10</sup> dagger at his belt. Plainly this was the singer; plainly he had been stirring the caldron, when some incautious step among the lumber had fallen upon his ear. A little further off another man lay slumbering, rolled in a brown cloak, with a butterfly<sup>15</sup> hovering above his face. All this was in a clearing white with daisies; and at the extreme verge a bow, a sheaf of arrows, and part of a deer's carcass hung upon a flowering hawthorn.

Presently the fellow relaxed from his attitude of<sup>20</sup> attention, raised the spoon to his mouth, tasted its contents, nodded, and then fell again to stirring and singing.

“O, they must need to walk in wood that may not walk in town,”

he croaked, taking up his song where he had left it.<sup>25</sup>

“O, sir, we walk not here at all an evil thing to do,  
But if we meet with the good king's deer to shoot a shaft  
into.”



## The Black Arrow

Still as he sang, he took from time to time another spoonful of the broth, blew upon it, and tasted it, with all the airs of an experienced cook. At length, apparently, he judged the mess was ready, for, 5 taking the horn from his girdle, he blew three modulated calls.

The other fellow awoke, rolled over, brushed away the butterfly, and looked about him.

“How now, brother?” he said. “Dinner?”

10 “Ay, sot,” replied the cook, “dinner it is, and a dry dinner, too, with neither ale nor bread. But there is little pleasure in the greenwood now; time was when a good fellow could live here like a mitred abbot, set aside the rain and the white frosts; he 15 had his heart’s desire both of ale and wine. But now are men’s spirits dead, and this John Amend-All, save us and guard us! but a stuffed booby to scare crows withal.”

“Nay,” returned the other, “y’ are too set on 20 meat and drinking, Lawless. Bide ye a bit; the good time cometh.”

“Look ye,” returned the cook, “I have even waited for this good time sith that I was so high. I have been a grey friar; I have been a king’s 25 archer; I have been a shipman, and sailed the salt seas; and I have been in greenwood before this, forsooth! and shot the king’s deer. What

---

LINE 10. sot: stupid. 13. mitred abbot: an abbot wearing a mitre, or head-dress of high rank.

## A Greenwood Company

cometh of it? Naught! I were better to have bided in the cloister. John Abbot availeth more than John Amend-All. By'r Lady! here they come."

One after another, tall likely fellows began to stroll into the lawn. Each as he came produced a knife and a horn cup, helped himself from the caldron, and sat down upon the grass to eat. They were very variously equipped and armed; some in rusty smocks, and with nothing but a knife <sup>10</sup> and an old bow; others in the height of forest gallantry, all in Lincoln green, both hood and jerkin, with dainty peacock arrows in their belts, a horn upon a baldric, and a sword and dagger at their sides. They came in the silence of hunger, and <sup>15</sup> scarce growled a salutation, but fell instantly to meat.

There were, perhaps, a score of them already gathered, when a sound of suppressed cheering arose close by among the hawthorns, and immedi- <sup>20</sup> ately after five or six woodmen carrying a stretcher debouched upon the lawn. A tall, lusty fellow, somewhat grizzled, and as brown as a smoked ham, walked before them with an air of some authority, his bow at his back, a bright boar-spear in his hand. <sup>25</sup>

"Lads!" he cried, "good fellows all, and my

---

LINE 14. **baldric**: a belt over the shoulder to support a bugle or powder flask. 22. **debouched**: emerged. 23. **grizzled**: gray.

## The Black Arrow

right merry friends, y' have sung this while on a dry whistle and lived at little ease. But what said I ever? Abide Fortune constantly; she turneth, turneth swift. And lo! here is her little firstling —  
5 even that good creature, ale!”

There was a murmur of applause as the bearers set down the stretcher and displayed a goodly cask.

“And now haste ye, boys,” the man continued. “There is work toward. A handful of archers are  
10 but now come to the ferry; murrey and blue is their wear; they are our butts — they shall all taste arrows — no man of them shall struggle through this wood. For, lads, we are here some fifty strong, each man of us most foully wronged;  
15 for some they have lost lands, and some friends; and some they have been outlawed — all oppressed! Who, then, hath done this evil? Sir Daniel, by the rood! Shall he then profit? Shall he sit snug in our houses? Shall he till our fields? Shall he  
20 suck the bone he robbed us of? I trow not. He getteth him strength at law; he gaineth cases; nay, there is one case he shall not gain — I have a writ here at my belt that, please the saints, shall conquer him.”

25 Lawless the cook was by this time already at his second horn of ale. He raised it, as if to pledge the speaker.

---

LINE 11. **butts**: targets.

## A Greenwood Company

“Master Ellis,” he said, “y’ are for vengeance — well it becometh you! — but your poor brother o’ the greenwood, that had never lands to lose nor friends to think upon, looketh rather, for his poor part, to the profit of the thing. He had liever a gold noble and a pottle of canary wine than all the 5  
vengeances in purgatory.”

“Lawless,” replied the other, “to reach the Moat House, Sir Daniel must pass the forest. We shall make that passage dearer, pardy, than any battle. 10  
Then, when he has got to earth with such ragged handful as escapeth us — all his great friends fallen and fled away, and none to give him aid — we shall beleaguer that old fox about, and great shall be the fall of him. ’Tis a fat buck; he will make a 15  
dinner for us all.”

“Ay,” returned Lawless, “I have eaten many of these dinners beforehand; but the cooking of them is hot work, good Master Ellis. And meanwhile what do we? We make black arrows, we write 20  
rhymes, and we drink fair cold water, that discomfortable drink.”

“Y’ are untrue, Will Lawless. Ye still smell of the Grey Friars’ buttery; greed is your undoing,” answered Ellis. “We took twenty pounds from 25  
Appleyard. We took seven marks from the mes-

---

LINE 5. **liever**: more willingly. 6. **noble**: an old English coin of the reign of Edward III, worth \$5.30. 10. **pardy**: a common oath. 14. **beleaguer**: besiege.



## The Black Arrow

senger last night. A day ago we had fifty from the merchant."

"And to-day," said one of the men, "I stopped a fat pardoner riding apace for Holywood. Here is  
5 his purse."

Ellis counted the contents.

"Five score shillings!" he grumbled. "Fool, he had more in his sandal, or stitched into his tippet. Y' are but a child, Tom Cuckow; ye have lost the  
10 fish."

But, for all that, Ellis pocketed the purse with nonchalance. He stood leaning on his boar-spear, and looked round upon the rest. They, in various attitudes, took greedily of the venison pottage,  
15 and liberally washed it down with ale. This was a good day; they were in luck; but business pressed, and they were speedy in their eating. The first comers had by this time even dispatched their dinner. Some lay down upon the grass and fell  
20 instantly asleep, like boa-constrictors; others talked together, or overhauled their weapons; and one, whose humor was particularly gay, holding forth an ale-horn, began to sing:

25 "Here is no law in good green shaw,  
Here is no lack of meat;  
'Tis merry and quiet, with deer for our diet,  
In summer, when all is sweet.

---

LINE 14. *pottage*: thick soup or stew.

## A Greenwood Company

Come winter again, with wind and rain —  
Come winter, with snow and sleet,  
Get home to your places, with hoods on your faces,  
And sit by the fire and eat."

All this while the two lads had listened and lain close; only Richard had unslung his crossbow, and held ready in one hand the windac, or grappling-iron, that he used to bend it. Otherwise they had not dared to stir; and this scene of forest life had gone on before their eyes like a scene upon a theatre. 10 But now there came a strange interruption. The tall chimney which overtopped the remainder of the ruins rose right above their hiding-place. There came a whistle in the air, and then a sounding smack, and the fragments of a broken arrow fell 15 about their ears. Some one from the upper quarters of the wood, perhaps the very sentinel they saw posted in the fir, had shot an arrow at the chimney-top.

Matcham could not restrain a little cry, which he 20 instantly stifled, and even Dick started with surprise, and dropped the windac from his fingers. But to the fellows on the lawn, this shaft was an expected signal. They were all afoot together, tightening their belts, testing their bowstrings, 25 loosening sword and dagger in the sheath. Ellis held up his hand; his face had suddenly assumed a look of savage energy; the white of his eyes shone in his sun-brown face.

## The Black Arrow

“Lads,” he said, “ye know your places. Let not one man’s soul escape you. Appleyard was a whet before a meal; but now we go to table. I have three men whom I will bitterly avenge —  
5 Harry Shelton, Simon Malmesbury, and” — striking his broad bosom — “Ellis Duckworth, by the mass!”

Another man came, red with hurry, through the thorns.

10 “’Tis not Sir Daniel!” he panted. “They are but seven. Is the arrow gone?”

“It struck but now,” replied Ellis.

“A murrain!” cried the messenger. “Methought I heard it whistle. And I go dinnerless!”

15 In the space of a minute, some running, some walking sharply, according as their stations were nearer or farther away, the men of the Black Arrow had all disappeared from the neighborhood of the ruined house; and the caldron, and the fire,  
20 which was now burning low, and the dead deer’s carcass on the hawthorn, remained alone to testify they had been there.

---

LINE 3. whet: stimulant.

## CHAPTER V

### “Bloody as the Hunter”

THE lads lay quiet till the last footstep had melted on the wind. Then they arose, and with many an ache, for they were weary with constraint, clambered through the ruins, and recrossed the ditch upon the rafter. Matcham had picked up the windac and went first, Dick following stiffly, with his crossbow on his arm.

“And now,” said Matcham, “forth to Hollywood.”

“To Hollywood!” cried Dick, “when good fellows stand shot? Not I! I would see you hanged first, Jack!”

“Ye would leave me, would ye?” Matcham asked.

“Ay, by my sooth!” returned Dick. “An I be not in time to warn these lads, I will go die with them. What! would ye have me leave my own men that I have lived among? I trow not! Give me my windac.”

But there was nothing further from Matcham’s mind.

“Dick,” he said, “ye sware before the saints that ye would see me safe to Hollywood. Would



## The Black Arrow

ye be forsworn? Would you desert me — a perjurer?”

“Nay, I sware for the best,” returned Dick. “I meant it too; but now! But look ye, Jack, 5 turn again with me. Let me but warn these men, and, if needs must, stand shot with them; then shall all be clear, and I will on again to Hollywood and purge mine oath.”

“Ye but deride me,” answered Matcham. 10 “These men ye go to succor are the same that hunt me to my ruin.”

Dick scratched his head.

“I cannot help it, Jack,” he said. “Here is no remedy. What would ye? Ye run no great peril, 15 man; and these are in the way of death. Death!” he added. “Think of it! What a murrain do ye keep me here for? Give me the windac. Saint George! shall they all die?”

“Richard Shelton,” said Matcham, looking him 20 squarely in the face, “would ye, then, join party with Sir Daniel? Have ye not ears? Heard ye not this Ellis, what he said? Or have ye no heart for your own kindly blood and the father that men slew? ‘Harry Shelton,’ he said; and Sir Harry 25 Shelton was your father, as the sun shines in heaven.”

---

LINE 1. **be forsworn**: swear falsely. **perjurer**: one guilty of breaking a promise. 9. **deride**: ridicule. 10. **succor**: help.

## “Bloody as the Hunter”

“What would ye?” Dick cried again. “Would ye have me credit thieves?”

“Nay, I have heard it before now,” returned Matcham. “The fame goeth currently, it was Sir Daniel slew him. He slew him under oath; in his own house he shed the innocent blood. Heaven wearies for the avenging on’t; and you — the man’s son — ye go about to comfort and defend the murderer!”

“Jack,” cried the lad, “I know not. It may be; what know I? But, see here: this man hath bred me up and fostered me, and his men I have hunted with and played among; and to leave them in the hour of peril — O, man, if I did that, I were stark dead to honor! Nay, Jack, ye would not ask it; ye would not wish me to be base.”

“But your father, Dick!” said Matcham, somewhat wavering. “Your father? And your oath to me? Ye took the saints to witness.”

“My father?” cried Shelton. “Nay, he would have me go! If Sir Daniel slew him, when the hour comes this hand shall slay Sir Daniel; but neither him nor his will I desert in peril. And for mine oath, good Jack, ye shall absolve me of it here. For the lives’ sake of many men that hurt you not, and for mine honor, ye shall set me free.”

“I, Dick? Never!” returned Matcham. “An ye leave me, y’ are forsworn, and so I shall declare it.”

## The Black Arrow

"My blood heats," said Dick. "Give me the windac! Give it me!"

"I'll not," said Matcham. "I'll save you in your teeth."

5 "Not?" cried Dick. "I'll make you!"

"Try it," said the other.

They stood, looking in each other's eyes, each ready for a spring. Then Dick leaped; and though Matcham turned instantly and fled, in two bounds  
10 he was overtaken, the windac was twisted from his grasp; he was thrown roughly to the ground, and Dick stood across him, flushed and menacing, with doubled fist. Matcham lay where he had fallen, with his face in the grass, not thinking of  
15 resistance.

Dick bent his bow.

"I'll teach you!" he cried, fiercely. "Oath or no oath, ye may go hang for me!"

And he turned and began to run. Matcham was  
20 on his feet at once, and began running after him.

"What d'ye want?" cried Dick, stopping.  
"What make ye after me? Stand off!"

"I will follow an I please," said Matcham.  
"This wood is free to me."

25 "Stand back, by'r Lady!" returned Dick, raising his bow.

"Ah, y' are a brave boy!" retorted Matcham.  
"Shoot!"

Dick lowered his weapon in some confusion.

## “Bloody as the Hunter”

“See here,” he said. “Y’ have done me ill enough. Go, then. Go your way in fair wise; or, whether I will or not, I must even drive you to it.”

“Well,” said Matcham, doggedly, “y’ are the stronger. Do your worst. I shall not leave to follow thee, Dick, unless thou makest me,” he added.

Dick was almost beside himself. It went against his heart to beat a creature so defenseless; and, for the life of him, he knew no other way to rid himself of this unwelcome, and, as he began to think, perhaps untrue companion.

“Y’ are mad, I think,” he cried. “Fool-fellow, I am hasting to your foes; as fast as foot can carry me, go I thither.”

“I care not, Dick,” replied the lad. “If y’ are bound to die, Dick, I’ll die too. I would liever go with you to prison than to go free without you.”

“Well,” returned the other, “I may stand no longer prating. Follow me, if ye must; but if ye play me false, it shall but little advance you, mark ye that. Shalt have a quarrel in thine inwards, boy.”

So saying, Dick took once more to his heels, keeping in the margin of the thicket, and looking briskly about him as he went. At a good pace he rattled out of the dell, and came again into the more open quarters of the wood. To the left a little emi-



## The Black Arrow

nence appeared, spotted with golden gorse, and crowned with a black tuft of firs.

“I shall see from there,” he thought, and struck for it across a heathy clearing.

5 He had gone but a few yards, when Matcham touched him on the arm, and pointed. To the eastward of the summit there was a dip, and, as it were, a valley passing to the other side; the heath was not yet out; all the ground was rusty, like an  
10 unscoured buckler, and dotted sparingly with yews; and there, one following another, Dick saw half a score green jerkins mounting the ascent, and marching at their head, conspicuous by his boar-spear, Ellis Duckworth in person. One after  
15 another gained the top, showed for a moment against the sky, and then dipped upon the further side, until the last was gone.

Dick looked at Matcham with a kindlier eye.

“So y’ are to be true to me, Jack?” he asked.  
20 “I thought ye were of the other party.”

Matcham began to sob.

“What cheer!” cried Dick. “Now the saints behold us! Would ye snivel for a word?”

“Ye hurt me,” sobbed Matcham. “Ye hurt  
25 me when ye threw me down. Y’ are a coward to abuse your strength.”

“Nay, that is fool’s talk,” said Dick, roughly.

---

LINE 1. *gorse*: a spiny shrub. 10. *unscoured buckler*: unpolished shield.

## “Bloody as the Hunter”

“Y’ had no title to my windac, Master John. I would ’a’ done right to have well basted you. If ye go with me, ye must obey me; and so, come.”

Matcham had half a thought to stay behind; but, <sup>5</sup> seeing that Dick continued to scour full-tilt towards the eminence, and not so much as looked across his shoulder, he soon thought better of that, and began to run in turn. But the ground was very difficult and steep; Dick had already a long start, and had, <sup>10</sup> at any rate, the lighter heels, and he had long since come to the summit, crawled forward through the firs, and ensconced himself in a thick tuft of gorse, before Matcham, panting like a deer, rejoined him, and lay down in silence by his side. <sup>15</sup>

Below, in the bottom of a considerable valley, the short cut from Tunstall hamlet wound downwards to the ferry. It was well beaten, and the eye followed it easily from point to point. Here it was bordered by open glades; there the forest <sup>20</sup> closed upon it; every hundred yards it ran beside an ambush. Far down the path, the sun shone on seven steel salets, and from time to time, as the trees opened, Selden and his men could be seen riding briskly, still bent upon Sir Daniel’s mission. <sup>25</sup> The wind had somewhat fallen, but still tussled merrily with the trees, and, perhaps, had Appleyard

---

LINE 2. **basted**: thrashed. 6. **scour**: to run swiftly.  
13. **ensconced**: settled snugly.

## The Black Arrow

been there, he would have drawn a warning from the troubled conduct of the birds.

“Now, mark,” Dick whispered. “They be already well advanced into the wood; their safety  
5 lieth rather in continuing forward. But see ye where this wide glade runneth down before us, and in the midst of it, these two score trees make like an island? There were their safety. An they but come sound as far as that, I will make shift  
10 to warn them. But my heart misgiveth me; they are but seven against so many, and they but carry crossbows. The longbow, Jack, will have the uppermost ever.”

Meanwhile, Selden and his men still wound up  
15 the path, ignorant of their danger, and momentarily drew nearer hand. Once, indeed, they paused, drew into a group, and seemed to point and listen. But it was something from far away across the plain that had arrested their attention — a hollow growl  
20 of cannon that came, from time to time, upon the wind, and told of the great battle. It was worth a thought, to be sure; for if the voice of the big guns were thus become audible in Tunstall Forest, the fight must have rolled ever eastward, and the  
25 day, by consequence, gone sore against Sir Daniel and the lords of the dark rose.

But presently the little troop began again to move forward, and came next to a very open, heathy portion of the way, where but a single tongue of

## “Bloody as the Hunter”

forest ran down to join the road. They were but just abreast of this, when an arrow shone flying. One of the men threw up his arms, his horse reared, and both fell and struggled together in a mass. Even from where the boys lay they could hear the rumor of the men's voices crying out; they could see the startled horses prancing, and, presently, as the troop began to recover from their first surprise, one fellow beginning to dismount. A second arrow from somewhat farther off glanced in a wide arch; a second rider bit the dust. The man who was dismounting lost hold upon the rein, and his horse fled galloping, and dragged him by the foot along the road, bumping from stone to stone, and battered by the fleeing hoofs. The four who still kept the saddle instantly broke and scattered; one wheeled and rode, shrieking, towards the ferry; the other three, with loose rein and flying raiment, came galloping up the road from Tunstall. From every clump they passed an arrow sped. Soon a horse fell, but the rider found his feet and continued to pursue his comrades till a second shot dispatched him. Another man fell; then another horse; out of the whole troop there was but one fellow left, and he on foot; only, in different directions, the noise of the galloping of three riderless horses was dying fast into the distance.

All this time not one of the assailants had for a moment showed himself. Here and there along



## The Black Arrow

the path, horse or man rolled, undispatched, in his agony; but no merciful enemy broke cover to put them from their pain.

The solitary survivor stood bewildered in the 5 road beside his fallen charger. He had come the length of that broad glade, with the island of timber, pointed out by Dick. He was not, perhaps, five hundred yards from where the boys lay hidden; and they could see him plainly, looking to and fro 10 in deadly expectation. But nothing came; and the man began to pluck up his courage, and suddenly unslung and bent his bow. At the same time, by something in his action, Dick recognized Selden.

At this offer of resistance, from all about him in 15 the covert of the woods there went up the sound of laughter. A score of men, at least, for this was the very thickest of the ambush, joined in this cruel and untimely mirth. Then an arrow glanced over Selden's shoulder; and he leaped and ran a little 20 back. Another dart struck quivering at his heel. He made for the cover. A third shaft leaped out right in his face, and fell short in front of him. And then the laughter was repeated loudly, rising and re-echoing from different thickets.

25 It was plain that his assailants were but baiting him, as men, in those days, baited the poor bull, or as the cat still trifles with the mouse. The skirm-

---

LINE 1. undispatched; not killed.

## “Bloody as the Hunter”

ish was well over; farther down the road, a fellow in green was already calmly gathering the arrows; and now, in the evil pleasure of their hearts, they gave themselves the spectacle of their poor fellow-sinner in his torture. 5

Selden began to understand; he uttered a roar of anger, shouldered his crossbow, and sent a quarrel at a venture into the wood. Chance favored him, for a slight cry responded. Then, throwing down his weapon, Selden began to run 10 before him up the glade, and almost in a straight line for Dick and Matcham.

The companions of the Black Arrow now began to shoot in earnest. But they were properly served; their chance had passed; most of them had 15 now to shoot against the sun; and Selden, as he ran, bounded from side to side to baffle and deceive their aim. Best of all, by turning up the glade he had defeated their preparations; there were no marksmen posted higher up than the one whom he 20 had just killed or wounded; and the confusion of the foresters' counsels soon became apparent. A whistle sounded thrice, and then again twice. It was repeated from another quarter. The woods on either side became full of the sound of people 25 bursting through the underwood; and a bewildered deer ran out into the open, stood for a second on three feet, with nose in air, and then plunged again into the thicket.

## The Black Arrow

Selden still ran, bounding; ever and again an arrow followed him, but still would miss. It began to appear as if he might escape. Dick had his bow armed, ready to support him; even Matcham, 5 forgetful of his interest, took sides at heart for the poor fugitive; and both lads glowed and trembled in the ardor of their hearts.

He was within fifty yards of them, when an arrow struck him, and he fell. He was up again, 10 indeed, upon the instant; but now he ran staggering, and, like a blind man, turned aside from his direction.

Dick leaped to his feet and waved to him.

“Here!” he cried. “This way! Here is help! 15 Nay, run, fellow — run!”

But just then a second arrow struck Selden in the shoulder, between the plates of his brigandine, and, piercing through his jack, brought him, like a stone, to earth.

20 “Oh, the poor heart!” cried Matcham, with clasped hands.

And Dick stood petrified upon the hill, a mark for archery.

Ten to one he had speedily been shot — for the 25 foresters were furious with themselves, and taken unawares by Dick’s appearance in the rear of their position — but instantly out of a quarter of the

---

LINE 17. **brigandine**: a coat of defense, made of metal scales.

## “Bloody as the Hunter”

wood surprisingly near to the two lads, a stentorian voice arose, the voice of Ellis Duckworth.

“Hold!” it roared. “Shoot not! Take him alive! It is young Shelton — Harry’s son.”

And immediately after a shrill whistle sounded several times, and was again taken up and repeated farther off. The whistle, it appeared, was John Amend-All’s battle trumpet, by which he published his directions.

“Ah, foul fortune!” cried Dick. “We are un-<sup>10</sup> done. Swiftly, Jack, come swiftly!”

And the pair turned and ran back through the open pine clump that covered the summit of the hill.

---

LINE 1. **stentorian**: loud and strong.



## CHAPTER VI

### To the Day's End

IT was, indeed, high time for them to run. On every side the company of the Black Arrow was making for the hill. Some, being better runners, or having open ground to run upon, had far out-  
5 stripped the others, and were already close upon the goal; some, following valleys, had spread out to right and left, and outflanked the lads on either side.

Dick plunged into the nearest cover. It was a  
10 tall grove of oaks, firm under foot and clear of underbrush, and as it lay down hill, they made good speed. There followed next a piece of open, which Dick avoided, holding to his left. Two minutes after, and the same obstacle arising, the lads  
15 followed the same course. Thus it followed that, while the lads, bending continually to the left drew nearer and nearer to the high road and the river which they had crossed an hour or two before, the great bulk of their pursuers were leaning to the  
20 other hand, and running towards Tunstall.

The lads paused to breathe. There was no sound of pursuit. Dick put his ear to the ground, and still there was nothing; but the wind, to be

## To the Day's End

sure, still made a turmoil in the trees, and it was hard to make certain.

“On again!” said Dick; and, tired as they were, and Matcham limping with his injured foot, they pulled themselves together, and once more pelted down the hill.

Three minutes later, they were breasting through a low thicket of evergreen. High overhead, the tall trees made a continuous roof of foliage. It was a pillared grove, as high as a cathedral, and, except for the hollies among which the lads were struggling, open and smoothly swarded.

On the other side, pushing through the last fringe of evergreen, they blundered forth again into the open twilight of the grove.

“Stand!” cried a voice.

And there, between the huge stems, not fifty feet before them, they beheld a stout fellow in green, sore blown with running, who instantly drew an arrow to the head and covered them. Matcham stopped with a cry; but Dick, without a pause, ran straight upon the forester, drawing his dagger as he went. The other, whether he was startled by the daring of the onslaught, or whether he was hampered by his orders, did not shoot; he stood wavering; and before he had time to come to himself, Dick bounded at his throat, and sent him

---

LINE 5. pelted: ran. 11. hollies: shrubs with sharply-pointed leaves and red berries.

## The Black Arrow

sprawling backward on the turf. The arrow went one way and the bow another with a sounding twang. The disarmed forester grappled his assailant; but the dagger shone and descended  
5 twice. Then came a couple of groans, and then Dick rose to his feet again, and the man lay motionless, stabbed to the heart.

“On!” said Dick; and he once more pelted forward, Matcham trailing in the rear. To say truth,  
10 they made but poor speed of it by now, laboring dismally as they ran, and catching for their breath like fish. Matcham had a cruel stitch, and his head swam; and as for Dick, his knees were like lead. But they kept up the form of running with  
15 undiminished courage.

Presently they came to the end of the grove. It stopped abruptly; and there, a few yards before them, was the high road from Risingham to Shoreby, lying, at this point between two even  
20 walls of forest.

At the sight Dick paused; and as soon as he stopped running, he became aware of a confused noise, which rapidly grew louder. It was at first like the rush of a very high gust of wind, but it  
25 soon became more definite, and resolved itself into the galloping of horses; and then, in a flash, a whole company of men-at-arms came driving round the corner, swept before the lads, and were gone again upon the instant. They rode as for their

## To the Day's End

lives, in complete disorder; some of them were wounded: riderless horses galloped at their side with bloody saddles. They were plainly fugitives from the great battle.

The noise of their passage had scarce begun to die away towards Shoreby, before fresh hoofs came echoing in their wake, and another deserter clattered down the road; this time a single rider, and, by his splendid armor, a man of high degree. Close after him there followed several baggage-wagons, fleeing at an ungainly canter, the drivers flailing at the horses as if for life. These must have run early in the day, but their cowardice was not to save them. For just before they came abreast of where the lads stood wondering, a man in hacked armor, and seemingly beside himself with fury, overtook the wagons, and with the truncheon of a sword began to cut the drivers down. Some leaped from their places and plunged into the wood; the others he sabered as they sat, cursing them the while for cowards in a voice that was scarce human.

All this time the noise in the distance had continued to increase; the rumble of carts, the clatter of horses, the cries of men, a great, confused rumor, came swelling on the wind; and it was plain that the root of a whole army was pouring, like an inundation, down the road.

---

LINE 17. **truncheon of a sword**: sword used as a truncheon or staff for beating. 26. **inundation**: flood.



## The Black Arrow

Dick stood somber. He had meant to follow the highway till the turn for Holywood, and now he had to change his plan. But above all, he had recognized the colors of Earl Risingham, and he  
5 knew that the battle had gone finally against the rose of Lancaster. Had Sir Daniel joined, and was he now a fugitive and ruined? Or had he deserted to the side of York, and was he forfeit to honor? It was an ugly choice.

10 "Come," he said, sternly; and, turning on his heel, he began to walk forward through the grove, with Matcham limping in his rear.

For some time they continued to thread the forest in silence. It was now growing late; the sun was  
15 setting in the plain beyond Kettleby; the tree-tops overhead glowed golden; but the shadows had begun to grow darker and the chill of the night to fall.

"If there was anything to eat!" cried Dick, sud-  
20 denly, pausing as he spoke.

Matcham sat down and began to weep.

"Ye can weep for your own supper, but when it was to save men's lives, your heart was hard enough," said Dick, contemptuously. "Y' ave  
25 seven deaths upon your conscience, Master John; I'll ne'er forgive you that."

"Conscience!" cried Matcham, looking fiercely up. "Mine! And ye have the man's red blood upon your dagger! And wherefore did ye slay

## To the Day's End

him, the poor soul? He drew his arrow, but he let not fly; he held you in his hand, and spared you! 'Tis as brave to kill a kitten as a man that not defends himself."

Dick was struck dumb.

5

"I slew him fair. I ran me in upon his bow," he cried.

"It was a coward blow," returned Matcham. "Y' are but a lout and bully, Master Dick; ye but abuse advantages; let there come a stronger, we will see you truckle at his boot! Ye care not for vengeance, neither — for your father's death that goes unpaid, and his poor ghost that clamoreth for justice. But if there come but a poor creature in your hands that lacketh skill and strength, and would befriend you, down she shall go!"

Dick was too furious to observe that "she."

"Marry!" he cried, "and here is news! Of any two the one will still be stronger. The better man throweth the worse, and the worse is well served. Ye deserve a belting, Master Matcham, for your ill-guidance and unthankfulness to me-ward; and what ye deserve ye shall have."

And Dick, who, even in his angriest temper, still preserved the appearance of composure, began to unbuckle his belt.

"Here shall be your supper," he said, grimly.

---

LINE 11. **truckle**: seek favor.

## The Black Arrow

Matcham had stopped his tears ; he was as white as a sheet, but he looked Dick steadily in the face, and never moved. Dick took a step, swinging the belt. Then he paused, embarrassed by the large  
5 eyes and the thin, weary face of his companion. His courage began to subside.

“Say ye were in the wrong, then,” he said, lamely.

“Nay,” said Matcham, “I was in the right.  
10 Come, cruel ! I be lame ; I be weary ; I resist not ; I ne’er did thee hurt ; come, beat me — coward !”

Dick raised the belt at this last provocation, but Matcham winced, and drew himself together with so cruel an apprehension, that his heart failed him  
15 yet again. The strap fell by his side, and he stood irresolute, feeling like a fool.

“A plague upon thee, shrew !” he said. “An ye be so feeble of hand, ye should keep the closer guard upon your tongue. But I’ll be hanged before I  
20 beat you !” and he put on his belt again. “Beat you I will not,” he continued, “but forgive you ? — never. I knew ye not ; ye were my master’s enemy ; I lent you my horse ; my dinner ye have eaten ; y’ ’ave called me a man o’ wood, a coward,  
25 and a bully. Nay, by the mass ! the measure is filled, and runneth over. ’Tis a great thing to be weak, I trow ; ye can do your worst, yet shall none punish you ; ye may steal a man’s weapons in the hour of need, yet may the man not take his own

## To the Day's End

again; — y' are weak, forsooth! Nay, then, if one cometh charging at you with a lance, and crieth he is weak, ye must let him pierce your body through! Tut! fool words!”

“And yet ye beat me not,” returned Matcham. 5

“Let be,” said Dick — “let be. I will instruct you. Y' 'ave been ill-nurtured, methinks, and yet ye have the makings of some good, and, beyond all question, saved me from the river. Nay, I had forgotten it; I am as thankless as thyself. 10 But, come, let us on. And we be for Holywood this night, ay, or to-morrow early, we had best set forward speedily.”

But though Dick had talked himself back into his usual good humor, Matcham had forgiven him 15 nothing. His violence, the recollection of the for-ester whom he had slain — above all, the vision of the upraised belt, were things not easily to be forgotten.

“I will thank you, for the form's sake,” said 20 Matcham. “But, in sooth, good Master Shelton, I had liever find my way alone. Here is a wide wood; prithee, let each choose his path; I owe you a dinner and a lesson. Fare ye well!”

“Nay,” cried Dick, “if that be your tune, so be 25 it, and a plague be with you!”

Each turned aside, and they began walking off severally, with no thought of the direction, intent solely on their quarrel. But Dick had not gone ten



## The Black Arrow

paces ere his name was called, and Matcham came running after.

“Dick,” he said, “it were unmannerly to part so coldly. Here is my hand, and my heart with it.  
5 For all that wherein you have so excellently served and helped me — not for the form, but from the heart, I thank you. Fare ye right well.”

“Well, lad,” returned Dick, taking the hand which was offered him, “good speed to you, if  
10 speed you may. But I misdoubt it shrewdly. Y’ are too disputatious.”

So then they separated for the second time; and presently it was Dick who was running after Matcham.

15 “Here,” he said, “take my crossbow; shalt not go unarmed.”

“A crossbow!” said Matcham. “Nay, boy, I have neither the strength to bend nor yet the skill to aim with it. It were no help to me, good boy.  
20 But yet I thank you.”

The night had now fallen, and under the trees they could no longer read each other’s face.

“I will go some little way with you,” said Dick. “The night is dark. I would fain leave you on a  
25 path, at least. My mind misgiveth me, y’ are likely to be lost.”

Without any more words, he began to walk

---

LINE 11. *disputatious*: inclined to argue.

## To the Day's End

forward, and the other once more followed him. The blackness grew thicker and thicker; only here and there, in open places, they saw the sky, dotted with small stars. In the distance, the noise of the rout of the Lancastrian army still continued to be faintly audible; but with every step they left it farther in the rear.

At the end of half an hour of silent progress they came forth upon a broad patch of heathy open. It glimmered in the light of the stars, shaggy with fern and islanded with clumps of yew. And here they paused and looked upon each other.

"Y' are weary?" Dick said.

"Nay, I am so weary," answered Matcham, "that methinks I could lie down and die."

"I hear the chiding of a river," returned Dick. "Let us go so far forth, for I am sore athirst."

The ground sloped down gently, and, sure enough, in the bottom, they found a little murmuring river, running among willows. Here they threw themselves down together by the brink; and putting their mouths to the level of a starry pool, they drank their fill.

"Dick," said Matcham, "it may not be. I can no more."

"I saw a pit as we came down," said Dick. "Let us lie down therein and sleep."

"Nay, but with all my heart!" cried Matcham,

## The Black Arrow

The pit was sandy and dry ; a shock of brambles hung upon one edge, and made a partial shelter ; and there the two lads lay down, keeping close together for the sake of warmth, their quarrel all  
5 forgotten. And soon sleep fell upon them like a cloud, and under the dew and stars they rested peacefully.

---

LINE 1. **brambles** : rough, prickly shrubs.

## CHAPTER VII

### The Hooded Face

THEY awoke in the grey of the morning; the birds were not yet in full song, but twittered here and there among the woods; the sun was not yet up, but the eastern sky was barred with solemn colors. Half-starved and over-weary as they were, 5 they lay without moving, sunk, in a delightful lassitude. And as they thus lay, the clang of a bell fell suddenly upon their ears.

“A bell!” said Dick, sitting up. “Can we be, then, so near to Holywood?” 10

A little after, the bell clanged again, but this time somewhat nearer hand; and from that time forth, and still drawing nearer and nearer, it continued to sound brokenly abroad in the silence of the morning. 15

“Nay, what should this betoken?” said Dick, who was now broad awake.

“It is some one walking,” returned Matcham, “and the bell tolleth ever as he moves.”

“I see that well,” said Dick. “But wherefore? 20 What maketh he in Tunstall Woods? Jack,” he added, “laugh at me an ye will, but I like not the hollow sound of it.”



## The Black Arrow

“Nay,” said Matcham, with a shiver, “it hath a doleful note. And the day were not come ——”

But just then the bell, quickening its pace, began to ring thick and hurried, and then it gave a single hammering jangle, and was silent for a space.

“It is as though the bearer had run for a pater-noster-while, and then leaped the river,” Dick observed.

“And now beginneth he again to pace soberly forward,” added Matcham.

“Nay,” returned Dick — “nay, not so soberly, Jack. ’Tis a man that walketh you right speedily. ’Tis a man in some fear of his life, or about some hurried business. See ye not how swift the beating draweth near?”

“It is now close by,” said Matcham.

They were now on the edge of the pit; and as the pit itself was on a certain eminence, they commanded a view over the greater proportion of the clearing, up to the thick woods that closed it in.

The daylight, which was very clear and grey, showed them a riband of white footpath wandering among the gorse. It passed some hundred yards from the pit, and ran the whole length of the clearing, east and west. By the line of its course, Dick judged it should lead more or less directly to the Moat House.

---

LINE 22. **riband**: a narrow strip.

## The Hooded Face

Upon this path, stepping forth from the margin of the wood, a white figure now appeared. It paused a little, and seemed to look about; and then, at a slow pace, and bent almost double, it began to draw near across the heath. At every step the bell clanked. Face it had none; a white hood, not even pierced with eyeholes, veiled the head; and as the creature moved, it seemed to feel its way with the tapping of a stick. Fear fell upon the lads, as cold as death. 10

“A leper!” said Dick, hoarsely.

“His touch is death,” said Matcham. “Let us run.”

“Not so,” returned Dick. “See ye not? — He is stone-blind. He guideth him with a staff. Let us lie still; the wind bloweth towards the path, and he will go by and hurt us not. Alas, poor soul, and we should rather pity him!” 15

“I will pity him when he is by,” replied Matcham. 20

The blind leper was now about half-way towards them, and just then the sun rose and shone full on his veiled face. He had been a tall man before he was bowed by his disgusting sickness, and even now he walked with a vigorous step. The dismal beating of his bell, the pattering of the stick, the eyeless screen before his countenance, and the knowledge that he was not only doomed to death and suffering, but shut out forever from the touch 25

## The Black Arrow

of his fellow-men, filled the lads' bosoms with dismay; and at every step that brought him nearer, their courage and strength seemed to desert them.

As he came about level with the pit, he paused, and turned his face full upon the lads.

"Mary be my shield! He sees us!" said Matcham faintly.

"Hush!" whispered Dick. "He doth but hearken. He is blind, fool!"

The leper looked or listened, whichever he was really doing, for some seconds. Then he began to move on again, but presently paused once more, and again turned and seemed to gaze upon the lads. Even Dick became dead-white and closed his eyes, as if by the mere sight he might become infected. But soon the bell sounded, and this time, without any further hesitation, the leper crossed the remainder of the little heath and disappeared into the covert of the woods.

"He saw us," said Matcham. "I could swear it!"

"Tut!" returned Dick, recovering some sparks of courage. "He but heard us. He was in fear, poor soul! An ye were blind, and walked in a perpetual night, ye would start yourself, if ever a twig rustled or a bird cried 'Peep.'"

"Dick, good Dick, he saw us," repeated

---

LINE 19. **covert**: protecting shadows.

## The Hooded Face

Matcham. "When a man hearkeneth, he doth not as this man; he doth otherwise, Dick. This was seeing; it was not hearing. He means foully. Hark, else, if his bell be not stopped!"

Such was the case. The bell rang no longer. 5

"Nay," said Dick, "I like not that. Nay," he cried again, "I like that little. What may this betoken? Let us go, by the mass!"

"He hath gone east," added Matcham. "Good Dick, let us go westward straight. I shall not 10 breathe till I have my back turned upon that leper."

"Jack, y' are too cowardly," replied Dick. "We shall go fair for Holywood, or as fair, at least, as I can guide you, and that will be due north."

They were afoot at once, passed the stream upon 15 some stepping-stones, and began to mount on the other side, which was steeper, towards the margin of the wood. The ground became very uneven, full of knolls and hollows; trees grew scattered or in clumps; it became difficult to choose a path, and 20 the lads somewhat wandered. They were weary, besides, with yesterday's exertions and the lack of food, and they moved but heavily and dragged their feet among the sand.

Presently, coming to the top of a knoll, they were 25 aware of the leper, some hundred feet in front of them, crossing the line of their march by a hollow. His bell was silent, his staff no longer tapped the ground, and he went before him with the swift



## The Black Arrow

and assured footsteps of a man who sees. Next moment he had disappeared into a little thicket.

The lads, at the first glimpse, had crouched behind a tuft of gorse; there they lay, horror-struck.

5 “Certain, he pursueth us,” said Dick, “certain. He held the clapper of his bell in one hand, saw ye? that it should not sound. Now may the saints aid and guide us, for I have no strength to combat pestilence!”

10 “What maketh he?” cried Matcham. “What doth he want? Who ever heard the like, that a leper, out of mere malice, should pursue unfortunates? Hath he not his bell to that very end, that people may avoid him? Dick, there is below this  
15 something deeper.”

“Nay, I care not,” moaned Dick; “the strength is gone out of me; my legs are like water. The saints be mine assistance!”

“Would ye lie there idle?” cried Matcham.  
20 “Let us back into the open. We have the better chance; he cannot steal upon us unawares.”

“Not I,” said Dick. “My time is come; and peradventure he may pass us by.”

“Bend me, then, your bow!” cried the other.  
25 “What, will ye be a man?”

Dick crossed himself. “Would ye have me shoot upon a leper?” he cried. “The hand would fail

---

LINE 23. *peradventure*: perhaps.

## The Hooded Face

me. Nay, now," he added — "nay, now, let be! With sound men I will fight, but not with ghosts and lepers. Which this is, I wot not. One or other, Heaven be our protection!"

"Now," said Matcham, "if this be man's courage, what a poor thing is man! But sith ye will do naught, let us lie close."

Then came a single, broken jangle on the bell.

"He hath missed his hold upon the clapper," whispered Matcham. "Saints! How near he is!"

But Dick answered never a word; his teeth were near chattering.

Soon they saw a piece of the white robe between some bushes; then the leper's head was thrust forth from behind a trunk, and he seemed narrowly to scan the neighborhood before he once again withdrew. To their stretched senses the whole bush appeared alive with rustlings and the creak of twigs; and they heard the beating of each other's heart.

Suddenly, with a cry, the leper sprang into the open close by, and ran straight upon the lads. They, shrieking aloud, separated and began to run different ways. But their horrible enemy fastened upon Matcham, ran him swiftly down, and had him almost instantly a prisoner. The lad gave one scream that echoed high and far over the forest, he had one spasm of struggling, and then

## The Black Arrow

all his limbs relaxed, and he fell limp into his captor's arms.

Dick heard the cry and turned. He saw Matcham fall; and on the instant his spirit and  
5 his strength revived. With a cry of pity and anger, he unslung and bent his arblast. But ere he had time to shoot, the leper held up his hand.

"Hold your shot, Dickon!" cried a familiar voice. "Hold your shot, mad wag! Know ye not  
10 a friend?"

And then laying down Matcham on the turf, he undid the hood from off his face, and disclosed the features of Sir Daniel Brackley.

"Sir Daniel!" cried Dick.

15 "Ay, by the mass, Sir Daniel!" returned the knight. "Would ye shoot upon your guardian, rogue? But here is this——" And there he broke off, and pointing to Matcham, asked — "How call ye him, Dick?"

20 "Nay," said Dick. "I call him Master Matcham. Know ye him not? He said ye knew him!"

"Ay," replied Sir Daniel, "I know the lad," and he chuckled. "But he has fainted; and, by my  
25 sooth, he might have had less to faint for. Hey, Dick? Did I put the fear of death upon you?"

"Indeed, Sir Daniel, ye did that," said Dick,

---

LINE 6. **arblast**: a crossbow. 9. **wag**: silly fellow.



“ The lad gave one scream and fell limp into his captor’s arms.”





## The Hooded Face

and sighed again at the mere recollection. "Nay, sir, saving your respect, I had as lief' a' met the devil in person; and to speak truth, I am yet all a-quake. But what made ye, sir, in such a guise?"

Sir Daniel's brow grew suddenly black with anger.

"What made I?" he said. "Ye do well to mind me of it! What? I skulked for my poor life in my own wood of Tunstall, Dick. We were ill sped at the battle; we but got there to be swept among the rout. Where be all my good men-at-arms? Dick, by the mass, I know not! We were swept down; the shot fell thick among us; I have not seen one man in my own colors since I saw three fall. For myself, I came sound to Shoreby, and being mindful of the Black Arrow, got me this gown and bell, and came softly by the path for the Moat House. There is no disguise to be compared with it, the jingle of this bell would scare me the stoutest outlaw in the forest; they would all turn pale to hear it. At length I came by you and Matcham. I could see but evilly through this same hood, and was not sure of you, being chiefly, and for many a good cause, astonished at the finding you together. Moreover, in the open, where I had to go slowly and tap with my staff, I feared to disclose myself. But see," he added, "this poor shrew begins a little to revive. A little good canary will comfort the heart of it."

## The Black Arrow

The knight, from under his long dress, produced a stout bottle, and began to rub the temples and wet the lips of the patient, who returned gradually to consciousness, and began to roll dim eyes from  
5 one to another.

“What cheer, Jack!” said Dick. “It was no leper, after all; it was Sir Daniel! See!”

“Swallow me a good draught of this,” said the knight. “This will give you manhood. There-  
10 after, I will give you both a meal, and we shall all three on to Tunstall. For, Dick,” he continued, laying forth bread and meat upon the grass, “I will avow to you in all good conscience, it irks me sorely to be safe between four walls. Not since I  
15 backed a horse have I been pressed so hard; peril of life, jeopardy of land and livelihood, and to sum up, all these losels in the wood to hunt me down. But I be not yet shent. Some of my lads will pick me their way home. Hatch hath ten fellows;  
20 Selden, he had six. Nay, we shall soon be strong again; and if I can but buy my peace with my right fortunate and undeserving Lord of York, why, Dick, we’ll be a man again and go a-horse-back!”

And so saying, the knight filled himself a horn  
25 of canary, and pledged his ward in dumb show.

“Selden,” Dick faltered — “Selden ——” And he paused again.

---

LINE 13. *it irks me*: I am anxious. 17. *losels*: scoundrels. 18. *shent*: overpowered.

## The Hooded Face

Sir Daniel put down the wine untasted.

“How!” he cried, in a changed voice. “Selden? Speak! What of Selden?”

Dick stammered forth the tale of the ambush and the massacre. 5

The knight heard in silence; but as he listened, his countenance became convulsed with rage and grief.

“Now here,” he cried, “on my right hand, I swear to avenge it! If that I fail, if that I spill not 10 ten men’s souls for each, may this hand wither from my body! I broke this Duckworth like a rush; I beggared him to his door; I burned the thatch above his head; I drove him from this country; and now, cometh he back to beard me? Nay, 15 but, Duckworth, this time it shall go bitter hard!”

He was silent for some time, his face working.

“Eat!” he cried, suddenly. “And you here,” he added to Matcham, “swear me an oath to follow straight to the Moat House.” 20

“I will pledge mine honor,” replied Matcham.

“What make I with your honor?” cried the knight. “Swear me upon your mother’s welfare!”

Matcham gave the required oath; and Sir Daniel readjusted the hood over his face, and 25 prepared his bell and staff. To see him once more in that appalling travesty somewhat revived the

---

LINE 27. *travesty*: disguise.



## The Black Arrow

horror of his two companions. But the knight was soon upon his feet.

“Eat with dispatch,” he said, “and follow me yarely to mine house.”

5 And with that he set forth again into the woods ; and presently after the bell began to sound, numbering his steps, and the two lads sat by their untasted meal, and heard it die slowly away up-hill into the distance.

10 “And so ye go to Tunstall !” Dick inquired.

“Yea, verily,” said Matcham, “when needs must ! I am braver behind Sir Daniel’s back than to his face.”

They ate hastily, and set forth along the path  
15 through the airy upper levels of the forest, where great beeches stood apart among green lawns, and the birds and squirrels made merry on the boughs. Two hours later, they began to descend upon the other side, and already, among the tree-tops, saw  
20 before them the red walls and roofs of Tunstall House.

“Here,” said Matcham, pausing, “ye shall take your leave of your friend Jack, whom y’ are to see no more. Come, Dick, forgive him what he did  
25 amiss, as he, for his part, cheerfully and lovingly forgiveth you.”

“And wherefore so ?” asked Dick. “An we

---

LINE 4. *yarely*: quickly.

## The Hooded Face

both go to Tunstall, I shall see you yet again, I trow, and that right often."

"Ye'll never again see poor Jack Matcham," replied the other, "that was so fearful and burdensome, and yet plucked you from the river; ye'll 5 not see him more, Dick, by mine honor!" He held his arms open, and the lads embraced and kissed. "And Dick," continued Matcham, "my spirit bodeth ill. Y' are now to see a new Sir Daniel; for heretofore hath all prospered in his 10 hands exceedingly, and fortune followed him; but now, methinks, when his fate hath come upon him, and he runs the adventure of his life, he will prove but a foul lord to both of us. He may be brave in battle, but he hath the liar's eye; there is fear 15 in his eye, Dick, and fear is as cruel as the wolf! We go down into that house, Saint Mary guide us forth again!"

And so they continued their descent in silence, and came out at last before Sir Daniel's forest 20 stronghold, where it stood, low and shady, flanked with round towers and stained with moss and lichen, in the lilled waters of the moat. Even as they appeared, the doors were opened, the bridge 25 lowered, and Sir Daniel himself, with Hatch and the parson at his side, stood ready to receive them.

---

LINE 23. **lichen**: a slender, white plant growing flat upon a surface of stone or wood.

## BOOK II: THE MOAT HOUSE

### CHAPTER I

#### Dick Asks Questions

THE Moat House stood not far from the rough forest road. Externally it was a compact rectangle of red stone, flanked at each corner by a round tower, pierced for archery and battlemented at the 5 top. Within, it enclosed a narrow court. The moat was perhaps twelve feet wide, crossed by a single drawbridge. It was supplied with water by a trench, leading to a forest pool, and commanded, through its whole length, from the battlements of 10 the two southern towers. Except that one or two tall and thick trees had been suffered to remain within half a bowshot of the walls, the house was in a good posture for defensé.

In the court, Dick found a part of the garrison, 15 busy with preparations for defense, and gloomily discussing the chances of a siege. Some were making arrows, some sharpening swords that had long been disused; but even as they worked, they shook their heads.

---

LINE 6. **moat**: a defensive ditch surrounding a fortress wall.

## Dick Asks Questions

Twelve of Sir Daniel's party had escaped the battle, run the gauntlet through the wood, and come alive to the Moat House. But out of this dozen, three had been gravely wounded: two at Risingham in the disorder of the rout, one by John <sup>5</sup> Amend-All's marksmen as he crossed the forest. This raised the force of the garrison, counting Hatch, Sir Daniel, and young Shelton, to twenty-two effective men. And more might be continually expected to arrive. The danger lay not, therefore, <sup>10</sup> in the lack of men.

It was the terror of the black arrow that oppressed the spirits of the garrison. For their open foes of the party of York, in these most changing times, they felt but a far-away concern. "The <sup>15</sup> world," as people said in those days, "might change again" before harm came. But for their neighbors in the wood they trembled. It was not Sir Daniel alone who was a mark for hatred. His men, conscious of impunity, had carried themselves <sup>20</sup> cruelly through all the country. Harsh commands had been harshly executed; and of the little band that now sat talking in the court, there was not one but had been guilty of some act of oppression or barbarity. And now, by the fortune of war, Sir <sup>25</sup> Daniel had become powerless to protect his instruments; now, by the issue of some hours of battle,

---

LINE 20. **impunity**: freedom from punishment.



## The Black Arrow

at which many of them had not been present, they had all become punishable traitors to the State, outside the buckler of the law, a shrunken company in a poor fortress that was hardly tenable, and exposed upon all sides to the just resentment of their victims. Nor had there been lacking grisly advertisements of what they might expect.

At different periods of the evening and the night, no fewer than seven riderless horses had come neighing in terror to the gate. Two were from Selden's troop; five belonged to men who had ridden with Sir Daniel to the field. Lastly, a little before dawn, a spearman had come staggering to the moat-side, pierced by three arrows; even as they carried him in, his spirit had departed; but by the words that he uttered in his agony, he must have been the last survivor of a considerable company of men.

Hatch himself showed, under his sun-brown, the pallor of anxiety; and when he had taken Dick aside and learned the fate of Selden, he fell on a stone bench and fairly wept. The others, from where they sat on stools or doorsteps in the sunny angle of the court, looked at him with wonder and alarm, but none ventured to inquire the cause of his emotion.

"Nay, Master Shelton," said Hatch at last —  
"nay, but what said I? We shall all go. Selden

---

LINE 3. **buckler**: protection. 4. **tenable**: capable of defense. 6. **grisly**: fear-inspiring.

## Dick Asks Questions

was a man of his hands; he was like a brother to me. Well, he has gone second; well, we shall all follow! For what said their knave rhyme? — ‘A black arrow in each black heart.’ Was it not so it went? Appleyard, Selden, Smith, old Hum-<sup>5</sup>phrey gone; and there lieth poor John Carter, crying, poor sinner, for the priest.”

Dick gave ear. Out of a low window, hard by where they were talking, groans and murmurs came to his ear. 10

“Lieth he there?” he asked.

“Ay, in the second porter’s chamber,” answered Hatch. “We could not bear him farther, soul and body were so bitterly at odds. At every step we lifted him, he thought to wend. But now, me <sup>15</sup> thinks, it is the soul that suffereth. Ever for the priest he crieth, and Sir Oliver, I wot not why, still cometh not. ’Twill be a long shrift; but poor Appleyard and poor Selden, they had none.”

Dick stooped to the window and looked in. The <sup>20</sup> little cell was low and dark, but he could make out the wounded soldier lying moaning on his pallet.

“Carter, poor friend, how goeth it?” he asked.

“Master Shelton,” returned the man, in an excited whisper, “for the dear light of heaven, <sup>25</sup> bring the priest. Alack, I am sped: I am brought very low down; my hurt is to the death. Ye

---

LINE 18. **shrift**: confession. 22. **pallet**: a bed of straw.

## The Black Arrow

may do me no more service ; this shall be the last. Now, for my poor soul's interest, and as a loyal gentleman, bestir you ; for I have that matter on my conscience that shall drag me deep."

5 He groaned, and Dick heard the grating of his teeth, whether in pain or terror.

Just then Sir Daniel appeared upon the threshold of the hall. He had a letter in one hand.

"Lads," he said, "we have had a shog, we have  
10 had a tumble ; wherefore, then, deny it? Rather it imputeth to get speedily again to saddle. This old Harry the Sixt has had the undermost. Wash we, then, our hands of him. I have a good friend that rideth next the duke, the Lord of Wensleydale.  
15 Well, I have writ a letter to my friend, praying his good lordship, and offering large satisfaction for the past and reasonable surety for the future. Doubt not but he will lend a favorable ear. A prayer without gifts is like a song without music ;  
20 I surfeit him with promises, boys — I spare not to promise. What, then, is lacking? Nay, a great thing — wherefore should I deceive you? — a great thing and a difficult : a messenger to bear it. The woods — y' are not ignorant of that —  
25 lie thick with our ill-willers. Haste is most needful ; but without sleight and caution all is nought. Which, then, of this company will take me this

---

LINE 11. *imputeth* : charges us. 26. *sleight* : craftiness.

## Dick Asks Questions

letter, bear it to my Lord of Wensleydale, and bring me the answer back?"

One man instantly arose.

"I will, an't like you," said he. "I will even risk my carcass." 5

"Nay, Dicky Bowyer, not so," returned the knight. "It likes me not. Y' are sly, indeed, but not speedy. Ye were a laggard ever."

"An't be so, Sir Daniel, here am I," cried another.

"The saints forbend!" said the knight. "Y' are 10 speedy, but not sly. Ye would blunder me head-foremost into John Amend-All's camp. I thank you both for your good courage; but, in sooth, it may not be."

Then Hatch offered himself, and he also was 15 refused.

"I want you here, good Bennet; y' are my right hand, indeed," returned the knight; and then several coming forward in a group, Sir Daniel at length selected one and gave him the letter. 20

"Now," he said, "upon your good speed and better discretion we do all depend. Bring me a good answer back, and before three weeks I will have purged my forest of these vagabonds that brave us to our faces. But mark it well, Throg- 25 morton: the matter is not easy. Ye must steal forth under night, and go like a fox; and how ye

---

LINE 10. *forbend*: forbid. 24. *purged*: rid.



## The Black Arrow

are to cross Till I know not, neither by the bridge nor ferry."

"I can swim," returned Throgmorton. "I will come soundly, fear not."

5 "Well, friend, get ye to the buttery," replied Sir Daniel. "Ye shall swim first of all in nut-brown ale." And with that he turned back into the hall.

"Sir Daniel hath a wise tongue," said Hatch, aside, to Dick. "See, now, where many a lesser  
10 man had glossed the matter over, he speaketh it out plainly to his company. Here is a danger, 'a saith, and here difficulty; and jesteth in the very saying. Nay, by Saint Barbary, he is a born captain! Not a man but he is some deal heartened  
15 up! See how they fall again to work."

This praise of Sir Daniel put a thought in the lad's head.

"Bennet," he said, "how came my father by his end?"

20 "Ask me not that," replied Hatch. "I had no hand nor knowledge in it; furthermore, I will even be silent, Master Dick. For look you, in a man's own business, there he may speak; but of hearsay matters and of common talk, not so. Ask me Sir  
25 Oliver — ay, or Carter, if ye will; not me."

And Hatch set off to make the rounds, leaving Dick in a muse.

---

LINE 5. **buttery**: pantry or wine-room.

## Dick Asks Questions

"Wherefore would he not tell me?" thought the lad. "And wherefore named he Carter? Carter — nay, then Carter had a hand in it, perchance."

He entered the house, and passing some little way along a flagged and vaulted passage, came to the door of the cell where the hurt man lay groaning. At his entrance Carter started eagerly.

"Have ye brought the priest?" he cried.

"Not yet awhile," returned Dick. "Y' 'ave a word to tell me first. How came my father, Harry Shelton, by his death?"

The man's face altered instantly.

"I know not," he replied, doggedly.

"Nay, ye know well," returned Dick. "Seek not to put me by."

"I tell you I know not," repeated Carter.

"Then," said Dick, "ye shall die unshriven. Here am I, and here shall stay. There shall no priest come near you, rest assured. For of what avail is penitence, and ye have no mind to right those wrongs ye had a hand in? And without penitence, confession is but mockery."

"Ye say what ye mean not, Master Dick," said Carter, composedly. "It is ill threatening the dying, and becometh you (to speak truth) little. And for as little as it commends you, it shall serve

---

LINE 6. **flagged**: paved with broad, flat stones.

## The Black Arrow

you less. Stay, an ye please. Ye will condemn my soul — ye shall learn nothing! There is my last word to you.” And the wounded man turned upon the other side.

5 Now, Dick, to say truth, had spoken hastily, and was ashamed of his threat. But he made one more effort.

“Carter,” he said, “mistake me not. I know ye were but an instrument in the hands of others; 10 a churl must obey his lord; I would not bear heavily on such an one. But I begin to learn upon many sides that this great duty lieth on my youth and ignorance, to avenge my father. Prithee, then, good Carter, set aside the memory of my 15 threatenings, and in pure good-will and honest penitence, give me a word of help.”

The wounded man lay silent; nor, say what Dick pleased, could he extract another word from him.

20 “Well,” said Dick, “I will go call the priest to you as ye desired; for howsoever ye be in fault to me or mine, I would not be willingly in fault to any, least of all to one upon the last change.”

Again the old soldier heard him without speech 25 or motion; even his groans he had suppressed; and as Dick turned and left the room, he was filled with admiration for that rugged fortitude.

“And yet,” he thought, “of what use is courage without wit? Had his hands been clean, he would

## Dick Asks Questions

have spoken; his silence did confess the secret louder than words. Nay, upon all sides, proof floweth on me. Sir Daniel, he or his men, hath done this thing."

Dick paused in the stone passage with a heavy <sup>5</sup> heart. At that hour, in the ebb of Sir Daniel's fortune, when he was beleaguered by the archers of the Black Arrow, and proscribed by the victorious Yorkists, was Dick, also, to turn upon the man who had nourished and taught him, who had severely <sup>10</sup> punished indeed, but yet unwearyingly protected his youth? The necessity, if it should prove to be one, was cruel.

"Pray Heaven he be innocent!" he said.

And then steps sounded on the flagging, and Sir <sup>15</sup> Oliver came gravely towards the lad.

"One seeketh you earnestly," said Dick.

"I am upon the way, good Richard," said the priest. "It is this poor Carter. Alack, he is beyond cure." <sup>20</sup>

"And yet his soul is sicker than his body," answered Dick.

"Have ye seen him?" asked Sir Oliver, with a manifest start.

"I do but come from him," replied Dick. <sup>25</sup>

"What said he — what said he?" snapped the priest, with extraordinary eagerness.

---

LINE 8. proscribed: condemned.



## The Black Arrow

“He but cried for you the more piteously, Sir Oliver. It were well done to go the faster, for his hurt is grievous,” returned the lad.

“I am straight for him,” was the reply. “Well, 5 we have all our sins. We must all come to our latter day, good Richard.”

“Ay, sir; and it were well if we all came fairly,” answered Dick.

The priest dropped his eyes, and with an inaudible 10 benediction hurried on.

“He, too!” thought Dick — “he, that taught me in piety! Nay, then, what a world is this, if all that care for me be blood-guilty of my father’s death! Vengeance! Alas! What a sore fate is 15 mine, if I must be avenged upon my friends!”

The thought put Matcham in his head. He smiled at the remembrance of his strange companion, and then wondered where he was. Ever since they had come together to the doors of the 20 Moat House the younger lad had disappeared, and Dick began to weary for a word with him.

About an hour after, mass being somewhat hastily run through by Sir Oliver, the company gathered in 25 the hall for dinner. It was a long, low apartment, strewn with green rushes, and the walls hung with arras in a design of savage men and questing

---

LINE 27. **arras**: tapestry.

## Dick Asks Questions

bloodhounds; here and there hung spears and bows and bucklers; a fire blazed in the big chimney; there were arras-covered benches round the wall, and in the midst the table, fairly spread, awaited the arrival of the diners. Neither Sir Daniel nor his lady made their appearance. Sir Oliver himself was absent, and here again there was no word of Matcham. Dick began to grow alarmed, to recall his companion's melancholy forebodings, and to wonder to himself if any foul play had befallen him in that house.

After dinner he found Goody Hatch, who was hurrying to my lady Brackley.

"Goody," he said, "where is Master Matcham, I prithee? I saw ye go in with him when we arrived."

The old woman laughed aloud.

"Ah, Master Dick," she said, "'y' have a famous bright eye in your head, to be sure!" and laughed again.

"Nay, but where is he, indeed?" persisted Dick.

"Ye will never see him more," she returned, "never. It is sure."

"An I do not," returned the lad, "I will know the reason why. He came not hither of his full free will; such as I am, I am his best protector, and I will see him justly used. There be too many mysteries; I do begin to weary of the game!"

But as Dick was speaking, a heavy hand fell

## The Black Arrow

on his shoulder. It was Bennet Hatch that had come unperceived behind him. With a jerk of his thumb the retainer dismissed his wife.

“Friend Dick,” he said, as soon as they were  
5 alone, “are ye a moonstruck natural? An ye  
leave not certain things in peace, ye were better  
in the salt sea than here in Tunstall Moat House.  
Y’ have questioned me; y’ have baited Carter;  
y’ have frighted the jack-priest with hints. Bear  
10 ye more wisely, fool; and even now when Sir  
Daniel calleth you, show me a smooth face, for the  
love of wisdom. Y’ are to be sharply questioned.  
Look to your answers.”

“Hatch,” returned Dick, “in all this I smell a  
15 guilty conscience.”

“And ye go not the wiser, ye will soon smell  
blood,” replied Bennet. “I do but warn you.  
And here cometh one to call you.”

And indeed, at that very moment, a messenger  
20 came across the court to summon Dick into the  
presence of Sir Daniel.

---

LINE 5. *natural*: simpleton.

## CHAPTER II

### The Two Oaths

SIR Daniel was in the hall; there he paced angrily before the fire, awaiting Dick's arrival. None was by except Sir Oliver, and he sat discreetly backward, thumbing and muttering over his breviary. 5

"Y' have sent for me, Sir Daniel?" said young Shelton.

"I have sent for you, indeed," replied the knight. "For what cometh to mine ears? Have I been to you so heavy a guardian that ye make 10 haste to credit ill of me? Or sith that ye see me, for the nonce, some worsted, do ye think to quit my party? By the mass, your father was not so! Those he was near, those he stood by, come wind or weather. But you, Dick, y' are a fair-day friend, 15 it seemeth, and now seek to clear yourself of your allegiance."

"An 't please you, Sir Daniel, not so," returned Dick, firmly. "I am grateful and faithful, where gratitude and faith are due. And before more is 20

---

LINE 5. **breviary**: a book of prayer. 12. **for the nonce**: for the present.



## The Black Arrow

said, I thank you, and I thank Sir Oliver; y' have great claims upon me, both — none can have more; I were a hound if I forgot them."

"It is well," said Sir Daniel; and then, rising  
5 into anger: "Gratitude and faith are words, Dick Shelton," he continued, "but I look to deeds. In this hour of my peril, when my name is attainted, when my lands are forfeit, when this wood is full of men that hunger and thirst for my destruction,  
10 what doth gratitude? what doth faith? I have but a little company remaining; is it grateful or faithful to poison me their hearts with your insidious whisperings? Save me from such gratitude! But, come, now, what is it ye wish? Speak;  
15 we are here to answer. If ye have aught against me, stand forth and say it."

"Sir," replied Dick, "my father fell when I was yet a child. It hath come to mine ears that he was foully done by. It hath come to mine ears —  
20 for I will not dissemble — that ye had a hand in his undoing. And in all verity, — I shall not be at peace in mine own mind, nor very clear to help you, till I have certain resolution of these doubts."

Sir Daniel sat down in a deep settle. He took  
25 his chin in his hand and looked at Dick fixedly.

"And ye think I would be guardian to the man's son that I had murdered?" he asked.

---

LINE 7. **attainted**: dishonored. 12. **insidious**: harmful.  
23. **resolution**: clearing up. 24. **settle**: bench.

## The Two Oaths

“Nay,” said Dick, “pardon me if I answer churlishly; but indeed ye know right well a wardship is most profitable. All these years have ye not enjoyed my revenues, and led my men? Have ye not still my marriage? I wot not what it may be worth — it is worth something. Pardon me again; but if ye were base enough to slay a man under trust, here were, perhaps, reasons enough to move you to the lesser baseness.”

“When I was a lad of your years,” returned Sir Daniel, sternly, “my mind had not so turned upon suspicions. And Sir Oliver here,” he added, “why should he, a priest, be guilty of this act?”

“Nay, Sir Daniel,” said Dick, “but where the master biddeth, there will the dog go. It is well known this priest is but your instrument. I speak very freely; the time is not for courtesies. Even as I speak, so would I be answered. And answer get I none! Ye but put more questions. I rede ye beware, Sir Daniel; for in this way ye will but nourish and not satisfy my doubts.”

“I will answer you fairly, Master Richard,” said the knight. “Were I to pretend ye have not stirred my wrath, I were no honest man. But I will be just even in anger. Come to me with these words when y’ are grown and come to man’s estate, and I am no longer your guardian, and so helpless

---

LINE 2. *churlishly*: rudely. 5. *marriage*: see page 148.  
20. *rede*: advise.

## The Black Arrow

to resent them. Come to me then, and I will answer you as ye merit, with a buffet in the mouth. Till then ye have two courses: either swallow me down these insults, keep a silent tongue, and fight  
5 in the meanwhile for the man that fed and fought for your infancy; or else — the door standeth open, the woods are full of mine enemies — go.”

The spirit with which these words were uttered, the looks with which they were accompanied,  
10 staggered Dick; and yet he could not but observe that he had got no answer.

“I desire nothing more earnestly, Sir Daniel, than to believe you,” he replied. “Assure me ye are free from this.”

15 “Will ye take my word of honor, Dick?” inquired the knight.

“That would I,” answered the lad.

“I give it you,” returned Sir Daniel. “Upon my word of honor, upon the eternal welfare of my  
20 spirit, and as I shall answer for my deeds hereafter, I had no hand nor portion in your father’s death.”

He extended his hand, and Dick took it eagerly. Neither of them observed the priest, who, at the  
25 pronouncement of that solemn and false oath, had half arisen from his seat in an agony of horror and remorse.

“Ah,” cried Dick, “ye must find it in your great-heartedness to pardon me! I was a churl indeed

## The Two Oaths

to doubt of you. But ye have my hand upon it; I will doubt no more."

"Nay, Dick," replied Sir Daniel, "'y' are forgiven. Ye know not the world and its calumnious nature." 5

"I was the more to blame," added Dick, "in that the rogues pointed, not directly at yourself, but at Sir Oliver."

As he spoke, he turned towards the priest, and paused in the middle of the last word. This tall, <sup>10</sup> ruddy, corpulent, high-stepping man had fallen, you might say, to pieces; his color was gone, his limbs were relaxed, his lips stammered prayers; and now, when Dick's eyes were fixed upon him suddenly, he cried out aloud, like some wild animal, <sup>15</sup> and buried his face in his hands.

Sir Daniel was by him in two strides, and shook him fiercely by the shoulder. At the same moment Dick's suspicions reawakened.

"Nay," he said, "Sir Oliver may swear also. <sup>20</sup> 'Twas him they accused."

"He shall swear," said the knight.

Sir Oliver speechlessly waved his arms.

"Ay, by the mass! but ye shall swear," cried Sir Daniel, beside himself with fury. "Here, <sup>25</sup> upon this book, ye shall swear," he continued, picking up the breviary, which had fallen to the

---

LINE 4. **calumnious**: slanderous.



## The Black Arrow

ground. "What! Ye make me doubt you! Swear, I say; swear."

But the priest was still incapable of speech. His terror of Sir Daniel, his terror of perjury, risen to 5 about an equal height, strangled him.

And just then, through the high stained-glass window of the hall, a black arrow crashed, and struck, and stuck quivering in the midst of the long table.

10 Sir Oliver, with a loud scream, fell fainting on the rushes; while the knight, followed by Dick, dashed into the court and up the nearest corkscrew stair to the battlements. The sentries were all on the alert. The sun shone quietly on green lawns 15 dotted with trees, and on the wooded hills of the forest which enclosed the view. There was no sign of a besieger.

"Whence came that shot?" asked the knight.

"From yonder clump, Sir Daniel," returned a 20 sentinel.

The knight stood a little, musing. Then he turned to Dick. "Dick," he said, "keep me an eye upon these men; I leave you in charge here. As for the priest, he shall clear himself, or I will 25 know the reason why. I do almost begin to share in your suspicions. He shall swear, trust me, or we shall prove him guilty."

---

LINE 4. **perjury**: false swearing. 11. **rushes**: willow twigs covering the floor.

## The Two Oaths

Dick answered somewhat coldly, and the knight, giving him a piercing glance, hurriedly returned to the hall. His first glance was for the arrow. It was the first of these missiles he had seen, and as he turned it to and fro, the dark hue of it touched <sup>5</sup> him with some fear. Again there was some writing: one word — “Earthed.”

“Ay,” he broke out, “they know I am home, then. Earthed! Ay, but there is not a dog among them fit to dig me out.” 10

Sir Oliver had come to himself, and now scrambled to his feet.

“Alack, Sir Daniel!” he moaned, “y’ ’ave sworn a dread oath; y’ are doomed to the end of time.”

“Ay,” returned the knight, “I have sworn an <sup>15</sup> oath, indeed, thou chuckle-head; but thyself shalt swear a greater. It shall be on the blessed cross of Holywood. Look to it; get the words ready. It shall be sworn to-night.”

“Now, may Heaven lighten you!” replied the <sup>20</sup> priest; “may Heaven incline your heart from this iniquity!”

“Look you, my good father,” said Sir Daniel, “if y’ are for piety, I say no more; ye begin late, that is all. But if y’ are in any sense bent upon <sup>25</sup> wisdom, hear me. This lad beginneth to irk me like a wasp. I have a need for him, for I would sell his marriage. But I tell you, in all plainness. if that he continue to weary me, he shall go join his

## The Black Arrow

father. I give orders now to change him to the chamber above the chapel. If that ye can swear your innocency with a good solid oath and an assured countenance, it is well: the lad will be at  
5 peace a little, and I will spare him. If that ye stammer or blench, or anyways boggle at the swearing, he will not believe you; and by the mass, he shall die. There is for your thinking on."

"The chamber above the chapel!" gasped the  
10 priest.

"That same," replied the knight. "So if ye desire to save him, save him; and if ye desire not, prithee, go to, and let me be at peace! For an I had been a hasty man, I would already have put my  
15 sword through you, for your intolerable cowardice and folly. Have ye chosen? Say!"

"I have chosen," said the priest. "Heaven pardon me, I will do evil for good. I will swear for the lad's sake."

20 "So is it best!" said Sir Daniel. "Send for him, then, speedily. Ye shall see him alone. Yet I shall have an eye on you. I shall be here in the panel room."

The knight raised the arras and let it fall again  
25 behind him. There was the sound of a spring opening; then followed the creaking of trod stairs.

---

LINE 6. **blench**: flinch.

## The Two Oaths

Sir Oliver, left alone, cast a timorous glance upward at the arras-covered wall, and crossed himself with every appearance of terror and contrition.

"Nay, if he is in the chapel room," the priest murmured, "were it at my soul's cost, I must save 5 him."

Three minutes later, Dick, who had been summoned by another messenger, found Sir Oliver standing by the hall table, resolute and pale.

"Richard Shelton," he said, "ye have required 10 an oath from me. I might complain, I might deny you; but my heart is moved toward you for the past, and I will even content you as ye choose. By the true cross of Holywood, I did not slay your father." 15

"Sir Oliver," returned Dick, "when first we read John Amend-All's paper, I was convinced of so much. But suffer me to put two questions. Ye did not slay him; granted. But had ye no hand in it?" 20

"None," said Sir Oliver. And at the same time he began to contort his face, and signal with his mouth and eyebrows, like one who desired to convey a warning, yet dared not utter a sound.

Dick regarded him in wonder; then he turned 25 and looked all about him at the empty hall.

"What make ye?" he inquired.

---

LINE 3. **contrition**: remorse.



## The Black Arrow

“Why, naught,” returned the priest, hastily smoothing his countenance. “I make naught; I do but suffer; I am sick. I — I — prithee, Dick, I must be gone. On the true cross of Holywood,  
5 I am clean innocent alike of violence or treachery. Content ye, good lad. Farewell!”

And he made his escape from the apartment with unusual alacrity.

Dick remained rooted to the spot, his eyes wan-  
10 dering about the room, his face a changing picture of various emotions — wonder, doubt, suspicion, and amusement. Gradually, as his mind grew clearer, suspicion took the upper hand, and was succeeded by certainty of the worst. He raised  
15 his head, and, as he did so, violently started. High upon the wall there was the figure of a savage hunter woven in the tapestry. With one hand he held a horn to his mouth; in the other he brandished a stout spear. His face was dark, for he  
20 was meant to represent an African.

Now here was what had startled Richard Shelton. The sun had moved away from the hall windows, and at the same time the fire had blazed up high on the wide hearth, and shed a changeful glow upon  
25 the roof and hangings. In this light the figure of the black hunter had winked at him with a white eyelid.

He continued staring at the eye. The light shone upon it like a gem; it was liquid, it was alive.

## The Two Oaths

Again the white eyelid closed upon it for a fraction of a second, and the next moment it was gone.

There could be no mistake. The live eye that had been watching him through a hole in the tapestry was gone. The firelight no longer shone on a reflecting surface.

And instantly Dick awoke to the terrors of his position. Hatch's warning, the mute signals of the priest, this eye that had observed him from the wall, ran together in his mind. He saw he had been put upon his trial, that he had once more betrayed his suspicions, and that, short of some miracle, he was lost.

"If I cannot get me forth out of this house," he thought, "I am a dead man! And this poor Matcham, too — to what a cockatrice's nest have I not led him!"

He was still so thinking, when there came one in haste, to bid him help in changing his arms, his clothing, and his two or three books, to a new chamber.

"A new chamber?" he repeated. "Wherefore so? What chamber?"

"'Tis one above the chapel," answered the messenger.

"It hath stood long empty," said Dick, musing. "What manner of room is it?"

---

LINE 16. *cockatrice's*: a cockatrice was a fabulous serpent with a deadly glance.

## The Black Arrow

“Nay, a brave room,” returned the man. “But yet” — lowering his voice — “they call it haunted.”

“Haunted?” repeated Dick, with a chill. “I have not heard of it. Nay, then, and by whom?”  
5 The messenger looked about him; and then, in a low whisper, “By the sacrist of St. John’s,” he said. “They had him there to sleep one night, and in the morning — whew! — he was gone. The devil had taken him, they said; the more  
10 betoken, he had drunk late the night before.”

Dick followed the man with black forebodings.

---

LINE 7. **sacrist**: an officer having charge of the vestry of a church.

## CHAPTER III

### The Room over the Chapel

FROM the battlements nothing further was observed. The sun journeyed westward and at last went down; but to the eyes of all these eager sentinels, no living thing appeared in the neighborhood of Tunstall House. 5

When the night was at length fairly come, Throgmorton was led to a room overlooking an angle of the moat. Thence he was lowered with every precaution; the ripple of his swimming was audible for a brief period; then a black figure was 10 observed to land by the branches of a willow and crawl away among the grass. For some half-hour Sir Daniel and Hatch stood eagerly giving ear; but all remained quiet. The messenger had 15 got away in safety.

Sir Daniel's brow grew clearer. He turned to Hatch.

"Bennet," said he, "this John Amend-All is no more than a man ye see. He sleepeth. We will make a good end of him. Go to!" 20

All the afternoon and evening Dick had been ordered hither and thither, one command following



## The Black Arrow

another, till he was bewildered with the number and the hurry of commissions. All that time he had seen no more of Sir Oliver, and nothing of Matcham; and yet both the priest and the young  
5 lad ran continually in his mind. It was now his chief purpose to escape from Tunstall Moat House as speedily as might be; and yet, before he went, he desired a word with both of these.

At length, with a lamp in one hand, he mounted  
10 to his new apartment. It was large, low, and somewhat dark. The window looked upon the moat, and although it was so high up, it was heavily barred. The bed was luxurious, with one pillow of down, and one of lavender, and a red coverlet  
15 worked in a pattern of roses. All about the walls were cupboards, locked and padlocked, and concealed from view by hangings of dark-colored arras. Dick made the round, lifting the arras, sounding the panels, seeking vainly to open the cupboards.  
20 He assured himself that the door was strong, and the bolt solid; then he set down his lamp upon a bracket, and once more looked all around.

For what reason had he been given this chamber? It was larger and finer than his own. Could it  
25 conceal a snare? Was there a secret entrance? Was it indeed haunted? His blood ran a little chilly in his veins.

Immediately over him the heavy foot of a sentry trod the leads. Below him, he knew, was the





“ Dick ran to the door, drew the bolt, and admitted Matcham.”

## The Room over the Chapel

arched roof of the chapel; and next to the chapel was the hall. Certainly there was a secret passage in the hall; the eye that had watched him from the arras gave him proof of that. Was it not more than probable that the passage extended to the chapel, and if so, that it had an opening in his room?

To sleep in such a place, he felt, would be foolhardy. He made his weapons ready, and took his position in a corner of the room behind the door. 10 If ill was intended he would sell his life dear.

The sound of many feet, the challenge, and the password sounded overhead along the battlements; the watch was being changed.

And just then there came a scratching at the door 15 of the chamber; it grew a little louder; then a whisper:

“Dick, Dick, it is I!”

Dick ran to the door, drew the bolt, and admitted Matcham. He was very pale, and carried 20 a lamp in one hand and a drawn dagger in the other.

“Shut me the door,” he whispered. “Swift, Dick! This house is full of spies; I hear their feet follow me in the corridors; I hear them 25 breathe behind the arras.”

“Well, content you,” returned Dick, “it is closed. We are safe for this while, if there be safety anywhere within these walls. But my heart is



## The Black Arrow

glad to see you. By the mass, lad, I thought ye were sped. Where hid ye?"

"It matters not," returned Matcham. "Since we be met, it matters not. But, Dick, are your eyes open? Have they told ye of to-morrow's doings?"

"Not they," replied Dick. "What make they to-morrow?"

"To-morrow, or to-night, I know not," said the other; "but one time or other, Dick, they do intend upon your life. I had the proof of it: I have heard them whisper; nay, they as good as told me."

"Ay," returned Dick, "is it so? I had thought as much."

And he told him the day's occurrences at length. When it was done, Matcham arose and began, in turn, to examine the apartment.

"No," he said, "there is no entrance visible. Yet 'tis a pure certainty there is one. Dick, I will stay by you. An y' are to die, I will die with you. And I can help — look! I have stolen a dagger — I will do my best! And meanwhile, an ye know of any issue, any sally-port we could get opened, or any window that we might descend by, I will most joyfully face any jeopardy to flee with you."

"Jack," said Dick, "by the mass, Jack, y' are the best soul, and the truest, and the bravest in all England! Give me your hand, Jack."

---

LINE 2. *sped*: dead. 22. *sally-port*: a gate through which an escape may be made.

## The Room over the Chapel

And he grasped the other's hand in silence.

"I will tell you," he resumed. "There is a window out of which the messenger descended; the rope should still be in the chamber. 'Tis a hope."

"Hist!" said Matcham. 5

Both gave ear. There was a sound below the floor; then it paused, and then began again.

"Someone walketh in the room below," whispered Matcham.

"Nay," returned Dick, "there is no room below; 10 we are above the chapel. It is my murderer in the secret passage. Well, let him come; it shall go hard with him!" And he ground his teeth.

"Blow me the lights out," said the other. "Perchance he will betray himself." 15

They blew out both the lamps and lay still as death. The footfalls underneath were very soft, but they were clearly audible. Several times they came and went; and then there was a loud jar of a key turning in a lock, followed by a considerable 20 silence.

Presently the steps began again, and then, all of a sudden, a chink of light appeared in the planking of the room in a far corner. It widened; a trap-door was being opened, letting in a gush of 25 light. They could see the strong hand pushing it up; and Dick raised his crossbow, waiting for the head to follow.

But now there came an interruption. From a

## The Black Arrow

distant corner of the Moat House shouts began to be heard, and first one voice, and then several, crying aloud upon a name. This noise had plainly disconcerted the murderer, for the trap-door was  
5 silently lowered to its place, and the steps hurriedly returned, passed once more close below the lads, and died away in the distance.

Here was a moment's respite. Dick breathed deep, and then, and not till then, he gave ear to  
10 the disturbance which had interrupted the attack, and which was now rather increasing than diminishing. All about the Moat House feet were running, doors were opening and slamming, and still the voice of Sir Daniel towered above all this bustle,  
15 shouting for "Joanna."

"Joanna!" repeated Dick. "Why, who the murrain should this be? Here is no Joanna, nor ever hath been. What meaneth it?"

Matcham was silent. He seemed to have drawn  
20 further away. But only a little faint starlight entered by the window, and at the far end of the apartment, where the pair were, the darkness was complete.

"Jack," said Dick, "I wot not where ye were all  
25 day. Saw ye this Joanna?"

"Nay," returned Matcham, "I saw her not."

"Nor heard tell of her?" he pursued.

The steps drew nearer. Sir Daniel was still roaring the name of Joanna from the courtyard.

## The Room over the Chapel

“Did ye hear of her?” repeated Dick.

“I heard of her,” said Matcham.

“How your voice twitters! What aileth you?”  
said Dick. “’Tis a most excellent good fortune,  
this Joanna; it will take their minds from us.” 5

“Dick,” cried Matcham, “I am lost; we are both  
lost! Let us flee if there be yet time. They will  
not rest till they have found me. Or, see! Let me  
go forth; when they have found me, ye may flee.  
Let me forth, Dick — good Dick, let me away!” 10

She was groping for the bolt, when Dick at last  
comprehended.

“By the mass!” he cried, “y’ are no Jack; y’ are  
Joanna Sedley; y’ are the maid that would not  
marry me!” 15

The girl paused, and stood silent and motionless.  
Dick, too, was silent for a little; then he spoke  
again.

“Joanna,” he said, “y’ ’ave saved my life, and I  
have saved yours; and we have seen blood flow, 20  
and been friends and enemies — ay, and I took my  
belt to thrash you; and all that time I thought ye  
were a boy. But now death has me, and my time’s  
out, and before I die I must say this: y’ are the  
best maid and the bravest under heaven, and, if 25  
only I could live, I would marry you blithely: and,  
live or die, I love you!”

---

LINE 26. blithely: gladly.



## The Black Arrow

She answered nothing.

“Come,” he said, “speak up, Jack. Come, be a good maid, and say ye love me!”

“Why, Dick,” she cried, “would I be here?”

5 “Well, see ye here,” continued Dick, “an we but escape whole, we’ll marry; and an we’re to die, we die, and there’s an end on’t. But now that I think, how found ye my chamber?”

“I asked it of Dame Hatch,” she answered.

10 “Well, the dame’s staunch,” he answered; “she’ll not tell upon you. We have time before us.”

And just then, as if to contradict his words, feet came down the corridor, and a fist beat roughly on the door.

15 “Here!” cried a voice. “Open, Master Dick; open!”

Dick neither moved nor answered.

“It is all over,” said the girl; and she put her arms about Dick’s neck.

20 One after another, men came trooping to the door. Then Sir Daniel arrived himself, and there was a sudden cessation of the noise.

“Dick,” cried the knight, “be not an ass. The Seven Sleepers had been awake ere now. We know  
25 she is within there. Open, then, the door, man.”

Dick was silent again.

“Down with it,” said Sir Daniel. And imme-

---

LINE 10. **staunch** : trustworthy. 24. **Seven Sleepers** : youths of Ephesus who, according to legend, slept two hundred years.

## The Room over the Chapel

diately his followers fell savagely upon the door with foot and fist. Solid as it was, and strongly bolted, it would soon have given way, but once more fortune interfered. Over the thunderstorm of blows the cry of a sentinel was heard; it was followed by 5 another; shouts ran along the battlements, shouts answered out of the wood. In the first moment of alarm it sounded as if the foresters were carrying the Moat House by assault. And Sir Daniel and his men, desisting instantly from their attack upon 10 Dick's chamber, hurried to defend the walls.

"Now," cried Dick, "we are saved."

He seized the great old bedstead with both hands, and bent himself in vain to move it.

"Help me, Jack. For your life's sake, help me 15 stoutly!" he cried.

Between them, with a huge effort, they dragged the big frame of oak across the room, and thrust it endwise to the chamber door.

"Ye do but make things worse," said Joanna, 20 sadly. "He will then enter by the trap."

"Not so," replied Dick. "He durst not tell his secret to so many. It is by the trap that we shall flee. Hark! The attack is over. Nay, it was none!" 25

It had, indeed, been no attack; it was the arrival of another party of stragglers from the defeat of Risingham that had disturbed Sir Daniel. They had run the gauntlet under cover of the darkness;

## The Black Arrow

they had been admitted by the great gate; and now with a great stamping of hoofs and jingle of accouterments and arms, they were dismounting in the court.

5 "He will return anon," said Dick. "To the trap!"

He lighted a lamp, and they went together into the corner of the room. The open chink through which some light still glittered was easily discovered, and, taking a stout sword from his small  
10 armory, Dick thrust it deep into the seam, and weighed strenuously on the hilt. The trap moved, gaped a little, and at length came widely open. Seizing it with their hands, the two young folk  
15 threw it back. It disclosed a few steps descending, and at the foot of them, where the would-be murderer had left it, a burning lamp.

"Now," said Dick, "go first and take the lamp. I will follow to close the trap."

20 So they descended one after the other, and, as Dick lowered the trap, the blows began once again to thunder on the panels of the door.

---

LINE 3. **accouterments**: equipment.

## CHAPTER IV

### The Passage

THE passage in which Dick and Joanna now found themselves was narrow, dirty, and short. At the other end of it a door stood partly open; the same door, without doubt, that they had heard the man unlocking. Heavy cobwebs hung from <sup>5</sup> the roof, and the paved flooring echoed hollow under the lightest tread.

Beyond the door there were two branches, at right angles. Dick chose one of them at random, and the pair hurried, with echoing footsteps, along <sup>10</sup> the hollow of the chapel roof. The top of the arched ceiling rose like a whale's back in the dim glimmer of the lamp. Here and there were spy-holes, concealed, on the other side, by the carving of the cornice; and looking down through one of <sup>15</sup> these, Dick saw the paved floor of the chapel — the altar, with its burning tapers — and stretched before it on the steps, the figure of Sir Oliver praying with uplifted hands.

At the other end, they descended a few steps. <sup>20</sup> The passage grew narrower; the wall upon one

---

LINE 15. **cornice**: ornamental molding running around the walls of a room, close to the ceiling.



## The Black Arrow

hand was now of wood ; the noise of people talking, and a faint flickering of lights, came through the interstices ; and presently they came to a round hole about the size of a man's eye, and Dick, 5 looking down through it, beheld the interior of the hall, and some half a dozen men sitting, in their jacks, about the table, drinking deep and demolishing a venison pie. These were certainly some of the late arrivals.

10 "Here is no help," said Dick. "Let us try back."

"Nay," said Joanna, "maybe the passage goeth farther."

And she pushed on. But a few yards farther the 15 passage ended at the top of a short flight of steps ; and it became plain that, as long as the soldiers occupied the hall, escape was impossible upon that side.

They retraced their steps with all imaginable 20 speed, and set forward to explore the other branch. It was exceedingly narrow, scarce wide enough for a large man ; and it led then continually up and down by little breakneck stairs, until even Dick had lost all notion of his whereabouts.

25 At length it grew both narrower and lower ; the stairs continued to descend ; the walls on either hand became damp and slimy to the touch ; and far

---

LINE 3. **interstices** : narrow openings.

## The Passage

in front of them they heard the squeaking and scuttling of the rats.

“We must be in the dungeons,” Dick remarked.

“And still there is no outlet,” added Joanna.

“Nay, but an outlet there must be!” Dick answered.

Presently, sure enough, they came to a sharp angle, and then the passage ended in a flight of steps. On the top of that there was a solid flag of stone by way of trap, and to this they both set <sup>10</sup> their backs. It was immovable.

“Some one holdeth it,” suggested Joanna.

“Not so,” said Dick; “for were a man as strong as ten he must still yield a little. But this resisteth like dead rock. There is a weight upon <sup>15</sup> the trap. Here is no issue; and, by my sooth, good Jack, we are here as fairly prisoners as though the gyves were on our ankle-bones. Sit ye then down, and let us talk. After a while we shall return, when perchance they shall be less carefully <sup>20</sup> upon their guard; and, who knoweth? we may break out and stand a chance. But, in my poor opinion, we are as good as shent.”

“Dick!” she cried, “alas the day that ever ye should have seen me! For like a most unhappy <sup>25</sup> and unthankful maid, it is I have led you hither.”

---

LINE 18. gyves: shackles. 23. shent: doomed.

## The Black Arrow

“What cheer!” returned Dick. “It was all written, and that which is written, willy nilly, cometh still to pass. But tell me a little what manner of a maid ye are, and how ye came into  
5 Sir Daniel’s hands; that will do better than to bemoan yourself, whether for your sake or mine.”

“I am an orphan, like yourself, of father and mother,” said Joanna; “and for my great misfortune, Dick, and hitherto for yours, I am a rich  
10 marriage. My Lord Foxham had me to ward; yet it appears Sir Daniel bought the marriage of me from the king, and a right dear price he paid for it. So here was I, poor babe, with two great and rich men fighting which should marry me, and  
15 I still at nurse! Well, then the world changed, and there was a new Chancellor, and Sir Daniel bought the warding of me over the Lord Foxham’s head. And then the world changed again, and Lord Foxham bought my marriage over Sir Dan-  
20 iel’s; and from then to now it went on ill betwixt the two of them. But still Lord Foxham kept me in his hands, and was a good lord to me. And at last I was to be married — or sold, if ye like it better. Five hundred pounds Lord Foxham was  
25 to get for me. Hamley was the groom’s name, and to-morrow, Dick, of all days in the year, was I to be betrothed. Had it not come to Sir Daniel,

---

LINE 2. willy nilly: whether we wish it or not.

## The Passage

I had been wedded, sure — and never seen thee, Dick — dear Dick !”

And here she took his hand, and kissed it with the prettiest grace ; and Dick drew her hand to him and did the like. 5

“Well,” she went on, “Sir Daniel took me un-awares in the garden, and made me dress in these men’s clothes, which is a deadly sin for a woman ; and, besides, they fit me not. He rode with me to Kettley, as ye saw, telling me I was to marry you ; <sup>10</sup> but I, in my heart, made sure I would marry Hamley in his teeth.”

“Ay !” cried Dick, “and so ye loved this Hamley ?”

“Nay,” replied Joanna, “not I. I did but hate <sup>15</sup> Sir Daniel. And then, Dick, ye helped me, and ye were right kind, and very bold, and my heart turned towards you in mine own despite ; and now, if we can in any way compass it, I would marry you with right goodwill. And if, by cruel destiny, <sup>20</sup> it may not be, still ye’ll be dear to me. While my heart beats, it’ll be true to you.”

“And I,” said Dick, “that never cared a straw for any manner of woman until now, I took to you when I thought ye were a boy. I had a pity <sup>25</sup> to you, and knew not why. When I would have belted you, the hand failed me. But when ye

---

LINE 18. in mine own despite: in spite of myself.  
19. compass it: bring it to pass.



## The Black Arrow

owned ye were a maid, Jack — for still I will call you Jack — I made sure ye were the maid for me. Hark!" he said, breaking off — "one cometh."

And indeed a heavy tread was now audible in the  
5 echoing passage, and the rats again fled in armies.

Dick reconnoitered his position. The sudden  
turn gave him a post of vantage. He could thus  
shoot in safety from the cover of the wall. But  
it was plain the light was too near him, and, run-  
10 ning some way forward, he set down the lamp in  
the middle of the passage, and then returned to  
watch.

Presently, at the far end of the passage, Bennet  
hove in sight. He seemed to be alone, and he  
15 carried in his hand a burning torch, which made  
him the better mark.

"Stand, Bennet!" cried Dick. "Another step  
and y' are dead."

"So here ye are," returned Hatch, peering for-  
20 ward into the darkness. "I see you not. Aha! y'  
'ave done wisely, Dick; y' 'ave put your lamp be-  
fore you. By my sooth, but, though it was done  
to shoot my own knave body, I do rejoice to see  
ye profit of my lessons! And now, what make ye?  
25 what seek ye here? Why would ye shoot upon an  
old, kind friend? And have ye the young gentle-  
woman there?"

---

LINE 6. reconnoitered: examined. 14. hove: came.

## The Passage

“Nay, Bennet, it is I should question and you answer,” replied Dick. “Why am I in this jeopardy of my life? Why do men come privily to slay me in my bed? Why am I now fleeing in mine own guardian’s strong house, and from the friends that I have lived among and never injured?”

“Master Dick, Master Dick,” said Bennet, “what told I you? Y’ are brave, but the most uncrafty lad that I can think upon!”

“Well,” returned Dick, “I see ye know all, and that I am doomed indeed. It is well. Here, where I am, I stay. Let Sir Daniel get me out if he be able!”

Hatch was silent for a space.

“Hark ye,” he began, “I return to Sir Daniel, to tell him where ye are, and how posted; for, in truth, it was to that end he sent me. But you, if ye are no fool, had best begone ere I return.”

“Begone!” repeated Dick. “I would begone already, an I wist how. I cannot move the trap.”

“Put me your hand into the corner, and see what ye find there,” replied Bennet. “Throgmorton’s rope is still in the brown chamber. Fare ye well.”

And Hatch, turning upon his heel, disappeared again into the windings of the passage.

Dick instantly returned for his lamp, and proceeded to act upon the hint. At one corner of the

---

LINE 9. uncrafty: tactless.

## The Black Arrow

trap there was a deep cavity in the wall. Pushing his arm into the aperture, Dick found an iron bar, which he thrust vigorously upwards. There followed a snapping noise, and the slab of stone instantly started in its bed.

They were free of the passage. A little exercise of strength easily raised the trap; and they came forth into a vaulted chamber, opening on one hand upon the court, where one or two fellows, with bare arms, were rubbing down the horses of the last arrivals. A torch or two, each stuck in an iron ring against the wall, changefully lit up the scene.

---

LINE 2. *aperture*: opening.

## CHAPTER V

### How Dick Changed Sides

DICK, blowing out his lamp lest it should attract attention, led the way upstairs and along the corridor. In the brown chamber the rope had been made fast to the frame of an exceedingly heavy and ancient bed. It had not been detached, and 5 Dick, taking the coil to the window, began to lower it slowly and cautiously into the darkness of the night. Joan stood by; but as the rope lengthened, and still Dick continued to pay it out, extreme fear began to conquer her resolution. 10

“Dick,” she said, “is it so deep? I may not essay it. I should infallibly fall, good Dick.”

It was just at the delicate moment of the operations that she spoke. Dick started; the remainder of the coil slipped from his grasp, and the end fell 15 with a splash into the moat. Instantly, from the battlement above, the voice of a sentinel cried, “Who goes?”

“A murrain!” cried Dick. “We are paid now! Down with you — take the rope.” 20

---

LINE 12. *essay*: try. *infallibly*: certainly.



## The Black Arrow

"I cannot," she cried, recoiling.

"An ye cannot, no more can I," said Shelton. "How can I swim the moat without you? Do ye desert me, then?"

5 "Dick," she gasped, "I cannot. The strength is gone from me."

"By the mass, then, we are all shent!" he shouted, stamping with his foot; and then, hearing steps, he ran to the room door and sought to close it.  
10 Before he could shoot the bolt, strong arms were thrusting it back upon him from the other side. He struggled for a second; then, feeling himself overpowered, ran back to the window. The girl had fallen against the wall in the embrasure of the win-  
15 dow; she was more than half insensible; and when he tried to raise her in his arms, her body was limp and unresponsive.

At the same moment the men who had forced the door against him laid hold upon him. The  
20 first he poniarded at a blow, and the others falling back for a second in some disorder, he profited by the chance, bestrode the window-sill, seized the cord in both hands, and let his body slip.

The cord was knotted, which made it the easier  
25 to descend; but so furious was Dick's hurry, and so small his experience of such gymnastics, that he spun round and round in mid-air like a criminal

---

LINE 14. **embrasure**: opening in the wall, that makes space for a window. 20. **poniarded**: killed by a dagger thrust.

## How Dick Changed Sides

upon a gibbet, and now beat his head, and now bruised his hands, against the rugged stonework of the wall. The air roared in his ears; he saw the stars overhead, and the reflected stars below him in the moat, whirling like dead leaves before the tempest. And then he lost hold and fell, and soused head over ears into the icy water.

When he came to the surface, his hand encountered the rope, which, newly lightened of his weight, was swinging wildly to and fro. There was a red glow overhead, and looking up, he saw, by the light of several torches and a cresset full of burning coals, the battlements lined with faces. He saw the men's eyes turning hither and thither in quest of him; but he was too far below, the light reached him not, and they looked in vain.

And now he perceived that the rope was considerably too long, and he began to struggle as well as he could towards the other side of the moat, still keeping his head above water. In this way he got much more than half-way over; indeed, the bank was almost within reach before the rope began to draw him back by its own weight. Taking his courage in both hands, he let go and made a leap for the trailing sprays of willow that had already, that same evening, helped Sir Daniel's messenger to land. He went down, rose again,

---

LINE 1. **gibbet**: gallows. 12. **cresset**: a frame to hold fire.

## The Black Arrow

sank a second time, and then his hand caught a branch, and with the speed of thought he had dragged himself into the thick of the tree and clung there, dripping and panting, and still half  
5 uncertain of his escape.

But all this had not been done without a considerable splashing, which had so far indicated his position to the men along the battlements. Arrows and quarrels fell thick around him in the darkness,  
10 thick like driving hail; and suddenly a torch was thrown down — flared through the air in its swift passage — stuck for a moment on the edge of the bank, where it burned high and lit up its whole surroundings like a bonfire — and then, in a good  
15 hour for Dick, slipped off, plumped into the moat, and was instantly extinguished.

It had served its purpose. The marksmen had had time to see the willow, and Dick ensconced among its boughs; and though the lad instantly  
20 sprang higher up the bank and ran for his life, he was yet not quick enough to escape a shot. An arrow struck him in the shoulder, another grazed his head.

The pain of his wounds lent him wings; and he  
25 had no sooner got upon the level than he took to his heels and ran straight before him in the dark, without a thought for the direction of his flight.

For a few steps missiles followed him, but these soon ceased; and when at length he came to a

## How Dick Changed Sides

halt and looked behind, he was already a good way from the Moat House, though he could still see the torches moving to and fro along its battlements.

He leaned against a tree, streaming with blood and water, bruised, wounded, and alone. For all that, he had saved his life for that bout; and though Joanna remained behind in the power of Sir Daniel, he neither blamed himself for an accident that it had been beyond his power to prevent, nor did he augur any fatal consequences to the girl herself. Sir Daniel was cruel, but he was not likely to be cruel to a young gentlewoman who had other protectors, willing and able to bring him to account. It was more probable he would make haste to marry her to some friend of his own. 15

“Well,” thought Dick, “between then and now I will find the means to bring that traitor under; for I think, by the mass, that I be now absolved from any gratitude or obligation; and when war is open, there is a fair chance for all.” 20

In the meanwhile, here he was in a sore plight.

For some little way farther he struggled forward through the forest; but what with the pain of his wounds, the darkness of the night, and the extreme uneasiness and confusion of his mind, he soon became equally unable to guide himself or to continue to push through the close undergrowth, and he was 25

---

LINE 10. *augur*: predict.



## The Black Arrow

fain at length to sit down and lean his back against a tree.

When he awoke from something betwixt sleep and swooning, the grey of the morning had begun to take the place of night. A little chilly breeze was bustling among the trees, and as he still sat staring before him, only half awake, he became aware of something dark that swung to and fro among the branches, some hundred yards in front of him. The progressive brightening of the day and the return of his own senses at last enabled him to recognize the object. It was a man hanging from the bough of a tall oak. His head had fallen forward on his breast; but at every stronger puff of wind his body spun round and round, and his legs and arms tossed, like some ridiculous plaything.

Dick clambered to his feet, and, staggering and leaning on the tree-trunks as he went, drew near to this grim object.

The bough was perhaps twenty feet above the ground, and the poor fellow had been drawn up so high by his executioners that his boots swung clear above Dick's reach; and as his hood had been drawn over his face, it was impossible to recognize the man.

Dick looked about him right and left; and at last he perceived that the other end of the cord had been made fast to the trunk of a little hawthorn which grew, thick with blossom, under the

## How Dick Changed Sides

lofty arcade of the oak. With his dagger, which alone remained to him of all his arms, young Shelton severed the rope, and instantly, with a dead thump, the corpse fell in a heap upon the ground.

Dick raised the hood; it was Throgmorton, Sir Daniel's messenger. He had not gone far upon his errand. A paper, which had apparently escaped the notice of the men of the Black Arrow, stuck from the bosom of his doublet, and Dick, pulling it forth, found it was Sir Daniel's letter to Lord Wensleydale.

"Come," thought he, "if the world changes yet again, I may have here the wherewithal to shame Sir Daniel — nay, and perchance to bring him to the block."

And he put the paper in his own bosom, said a prayer over the dead man, and set forth again through the woods.

His fatigue and weakness increased; his ears sang, his steps faltered, his mind at intervals failed him, so low had he been brought by loss of blood. Doubtless he made many deviations from his true path, but at last he came out upon the high-road, not very far from Tunstall hamlet.

A rough voice bid him stand.

"Stand?" repeated Dick. "By the mass, but I am nearer falling."

And he suited the action to the word, and fell all his length upon the road.

## The Black Arrow

Two men came forth out of the thicket, each in green forest jerkin, each with longbow and quiver and short sword.

“Why, Lawless,” said the younger of the two,  
5 “it is young Shelton.”

“Ay, this will be as good as bread to John Amend-All,” returned the other. “Though, faith, he hath been to the wars. Here is a tear in his scalp that must ’a’ cost him many a good ounce of  
10 blood.”

“And here,” added Greensheve, “is a hole in his shoulder that must have pricked him well. Who hath done this, think ye? If it be one of ours, he may all to prayer; Ellis will give him a short  
15 shrift and a long rope.”

“Up with the cub,” said Lawless. “Clap him on my back.”

And then, when Dick had been hoisted to his shoulders, and he had taken the lad’s arms about  
20 his neck, and got a firm hold of him, the ex-Grey Friar added :

“Keep ye the post, brother Greensheve. I will on with him by myself.”

So Greensheve returned to his ambush on the  
25 wayside, and Lawless trudged down the hill, whistling as he went, with Dick, still in a dead faint, comfortably settled on his shoulders.

The sun rose as he came out of the skirts of the wood and saw Tunstall hamlet straggling up the

## How Dick Changed Sides

opposite hill. All seemed quiet, but a strong post of some half a score of archers lay close by the bridge on either side of the road, and, as soon as they perceived Lawless with his burden, began to bestir themselves and set arrow to string like vigilant s sentries.

“Who goes?” cried the man in command.

“Will Lawless, by the rood — ye know me as well as your own hand,” returned the outlaw, contemptuously. 10

“Give the word, Lawless,” returned the other.

“Now, Heaven lighten thee, thou great fool,” replied Lawless. “Did I not tell it thee myself? But ye are all mad for this playing at soldiers. When I am in the greenwood, give me greenwood 15 ways; and my word for this tide is, ‘A fig for all mock soldiery!’”

“Lawless, ye but show an ill example; give us the word, fool jester,” said the commander of the post. 20

“And if I had forgotten it?” asked the other.

“An ye had forgotten it — as I know y’ ’ave not — by the mass, I would clap an arrow into your big body,” returned the first.

“Nay, an y’ are so ill a jester,” said Lawless, 25 “ye shall have your word for me. ‘Duckworth and Shelton’ is the word; and here, to the illustration, is Shelton on my shoulders, and to Duckworth do I carry him.”



## The Black Arrow

“Pass, Lawless,” said the sentry.

“And where is John?” asked the Grey Friar.

“He holdeth a court, by the mass, and taketh rents as to the manner born!” cried another of the  
5 company.

So it proved. When Lawless got as far up the village as the little inn, he found Ellis Duckworth surrounded by Sir Daniel’s tenants, and, by the right of his good company of archers, coolly taking  
10 rents, and giving written receipts in return for them. By the faces of the tenants, it was plain how little this proceeding pleased them; for they argued very rightly that they would simply have to pay them twice.

15 As soon as he knew what had brought Lawless, Ellis dismissed the remainder of the tenants, and, with every mark of interest and apprehension, conducted Dick into an inner chamber of the inn. There the lad’s hurts were looked to; and he was  
20 recalled, by simple remedies, to consciousness.

“Dear lad,” said Ellis, pressing his hand, “y’ are in a friend’s hands that loved your father, and loves you for his sake. Rest ye a little quietly, for ye are somewhat out of case. Then shall ye tell  
25 me your story, and betwixt the two of us we shall find a remedy for all.”

A little later in the day, and after Dick had awakened from a comfortable slumber to find himself still very weak, but clearer in mind and easier

## How Dick Changed Sides

in body, Ellis returned, and sitting down by the bedside, begged him, in the name of his father, to relate the circumstances of his escape from Tunstall Moat House. There was something in the strength of Duckworth's frame, in the honesty of 5 his brown face, in the clearness and shrewdness of his eyes, that moved Dick to obey him; and from first to last the lad told him the story of his two days' adventures.

"Well," said Ellis, when he had done, "see 10 what the kind saints have done for you, Dick Shelton, not alone to save your body in so numerous and deadly perils, but to bring you into my hands that have no dearer wish than to assist your father's son. Be but true to me — and I see y' are 15 true — and betwixt you and me, we shall bring that false-heart traitor to the death."

"Will ye assault the house?" asked Dick.

"I were mad, indeed, to think of it," returned Ellis. "He hath too much power; his men gather 20 to him; those that gave me the slip last night, and by the mass came in so handily for you — those have made him safe. Nay, Dick, to the contrary, thou and I and my brave bowmen, we must all slip from this forest speedily, and leave Sir Daniel 25 free."

"My mind misgiveth me for Jack," said the lad.

"For Jack!" repeated Duckworth. "Oh, I see, for the wench! Nay, Dick, I promise you if

## The Black Arrow

there come talk of any marriage we shall act at once; till then, or till the time is ripe, we shall all disappear, even like shadows at morning; Sir Daniel shall look east and west, and see none enemies; he shall think, by the mass, that he hath dreamed awhile, and hath now awakened in his bed. But our four eyes, Dick, shall follow him right close, and our four hands — so help us all the army of the saints! — shall bring that traitor low!”

Two days later Sir Daniel's garrison had grown to such a strength that he ventured on a sally, and at the head of some two score horsemen pushed without opposition as far as Tunstall hamlet. Not an arrow flew, not a man stirred in the thicket; the bridge was no longer guarded, but stood open to all comers; and as Sir Daniel crossed it, he saw the villagers looking timidly from their doors.

Presently one of them, taking heart of grace, came forward, and with the lowliest salutations, presented a letter to the knight.

His face darkened as he read the contents. It ran thus:

“*To the most untrue and cruel gentylman, Sir Daniel Brackley, Knyght, These:*

“I fynde ye were untrue and unkynd fro the first. Ye have my father's blood upon your hands; let be, it will not

---

LINE 12. sally: a military expedition.

## How Dick Changed Sides

wasse. Some day ye shall perish by my procurement, so much I let you to wytte; and I let you to wytte farther, that if ye seek to wed to any other the gentylwoman, Mistrresse Joan Sedley, whom that I am bound upon a great oath to wed myself, the blow will be very swift. The first 5 step therinne will be thy first step to the grave.

“RIC. SHELTON.”

---

LINE 1. **procurement**: efforts. 2. **wytte**: know.



## BOOK III: MY LORD FOXHAM

### CHAPTER I

#### The House by the Shore

MONTHS had passed away since Richard Shelton made his escape from the hands of his guardian. These months had been eventful for England. The party of Lancaster, which was then in the very  
5 article of death, had once more raised its head. The Yorkists defeated and dispersed, their leader butchered on the field, it seemed, for a very brief season in the winter following upon the events already recorded, as if the House of Lancaster had  
10 finally triumphed over its foes.

The small town of Shoreby-on-the-Till was full of the Lancastrian nobles of the neighborhood. Earl Risingham was there, with three hundred men-at-arms; Lord Shoreby, with two hundred;  
15 Sir Daniel himself, high in favor and once more growing rich on confiscations, lay in a house of his own, on the main street, with three score men. The world had changed indeed.

---

LINE 5. article of death: death agony. 11. Till: a tributary of the Tweed River.

## The House by the Shore

It was a black, bitter cold evening in the first week of January, with a hard frost, a high wind, and every likelihood of snow before the morning.

In an obscure alehouse in a by-street near the harbor three or four men sat drinking ale and eating a hasty mess of eggs. They were all likely, lusty, weather-beaten fellows, hard of hand, bold of eye; and though they wore plain tabards, like country plowmen, even a drunken soldier might have looked twice before he sought a quarrel in such company.

A little apart before the huge fire sat a younger man, almost a boy, dressed in much the same fashion, though it was easy to see by his looks that he was better born, and might have worn a sword, had the time suited.

“Nay,” said one of the men at the table, “I like it not. Ill will come of it. This is no place for jolly fellows. A jolly fellow loveth open country, good cover, and scarce foes; but here we are shut in a town, girt about with enemies; and, for the bull’s-eye of misfortune, see if it snow not ere the morning.”

“’Tis for Master Shelton there,” said another, nodding his head towards the lad before the fire.

“I will do much for Master Shelton,” returned the first; “but to come to the gallows for any man — nay, brothers, not that!”

The door of the inn opened, and another man

## The Black Arrow

entered hastily and approached the youth before the fire.

“Master Shelton,” he said, “Sir Daniel goeth forth with a pair of links and four archers.”

5 Dick (for this was our young friend) rose instantly to his feet.

“Lawless,” he said, “ye will take John Capper’s watch. Greensheve, follow with me. Capper, lead forward. We will follow him this time, an he go  
10 to York.”

The next moment they were outside in the dark street, and Capper, the man who had just come, pointed to where two torches flared in the wind at a little distance.

15 The town was already sound asleep; no one moved upon the streets, and there was nothing easier than to follow the party without observation. The two link-bearers went first; next followed a single man, whose long cloak blew about him in the  
20 wind; and the rear was brought up by the four archers, each with his bow upon his arm. They moved at a brisk walk, threading the intricate lanes and drawing nearer to the shore.

“He hath gone each night in this direction?”  
25 asked Dick, in a whisper.

“This is the third night running, Master Shelton,” returned Capper, “and still at the same hour

---

LINE 22. *intricate*: difficult to follow.

## The House by the Shore

and with the same small following, as though his end were secret."

Sir Daniel and his six men were now come to the outskirts of the country. Shoreby was an open town, and though the Lancastrian lords who lay<sup>5</sup> there kept a strong guard on the main roads, it was still possible to enter or depart unseen by any of the lesser streets or across the open country.

The lane which Sir Daniel had been following came to an abrupt end. Before him there was a<sup>10</sup> stretch of rough down, and the noise of the sea-surf was audible upon one hand. There were no guards in the neighborhood, nor any light in that quarter of the town.

Dick and his two outlaws drew a little closer to<sup>15</sup> the object of their chase, and presently, as they came forth from between the houses and could see a little farther upon either hand, they were aware of another torch drawing near from another direction.<sup>20</sup>

"Hey," said Dick, "I smell treason."

Meanwhile Sir Daniel had come to a full halt. The torches were stuck into the sand, and the men lay down, as if to await the arrival of the other party.<sup>25</sup>

This drew near at a good rate. It consisted of four men only — a pair of archers, a varlet with a

---

LINE 11. rough down: open plain. 27. varlet: body servant.



## The Black Arrow

link, and a cloaked gentleman walking in their midst.

“Is it you, my lord?” cried Sir Daniel.

“It is I, indeed; and if ever true knight gave  
5 proof, I am that man,” replied the leader of the  
second troop; “for who would not rather face  
giants, sorcerers, or pagans, than this pinching  
cold?”

“My lord,” returned Sir Daniel, “beauty will  
10 be the more beholden, misdoubt it not. But shall  
we forth? For the sooner ye have seen my mer-  
chandise, the sooner shall we both get home.”

“But why keep ye her here, good knight?” in-  
quired the other. “An she be so young, and so  
15 fair, and so wealthy, why do ye not bring her  
forth among her mates? Ye would soon make her  
a good marriage, and no need to freeze your fingers  
and risk arrow-shots by going abroad at such un-  
timely seasons in the dark.”

20 “I have told you, my lord,” replied Sir Daniel,  
“the reason thereof concerneth me only. Neither  
do I purpose to explain it farther. Suffice it that  
if ye be weary of your old gossip, Daniel Brackley,  
publish it abroad that y’ are to wed Joanna Sedley,  
25 and I give you my word ye will be quit of him right  
soon. Ye will find him with an arrow in his back.”

Meantime the two gentlemen were walking

---

LINE 23. *gossip*: companion.

## The House by the Shore

briskly forward over the down; the three torches going before them, stooping against the wind and scattering clouds of smoke and tufts of flame, and the rear brought up by the six archers.

Close upon the heels of these, Dick followed. 5  
He had, of course, heard no word of this conversation; but he had recognized in the second of the speakers old Lord Shoreby himself, a man of an infamous reputation, whom even Sir Daniel affected, in public, to condemn. 10

Presently they came close down upon the beach. The air smelt salt; the noise of the surf increased; and here, in a large walled garden, there stood a small house of two stories, with stables and other offices. 15

The foremost torch-bearer unlocked a door in the wall, and after the whole party had passed into the garden, again closed and locked it on the other side.

Dick and his men were thus excluded from any further following, unless they should scale the wall 20 and thus put their necks in a trap.

They sat down in a tuft of furze and waited. The red glow of the torches moved up and down and to and fro within the enclosure, as if the link-bearers steadily patrolled the garden. 25

Twenty minutes passed, and then the whole party issued forth again upon the down; and Sir

---

LINE 22. furze: shrubs.

## The Black Arrow

Daniel and the baron, after an elaborate salutation, separated and turned severally homeward, each with his own following of men and lights.

As soon as the sound of their steps had been  
5 swallowed by the wind, Dick got to his feet as briskly as he was able, for he was stiff and aching with the cold.

“Capper, ye will give me a back up,” he said.

They advanced, all three, to the wall; Capper  
10 stooped, and Dick, getting upon his shoulders, clambered on to the cope-stone.

“Now, Greensheve,” whispered Dick, “follow me up here; lie flat upon your face, that ye may be the less seen; and be ever ready to give me a hand  
15 if I fall foully on the other side.”

And so saying he dropped into the garden.

It was all pitch dark; there was no light in the house. The wind whistled shrill among the poor shrubs, and the surf beat upon the beach; there  
20 was no other sound. Cautiously Dick footed it forth, stumbling among bushes, and groping with his hands; and presently the crisp noise of gravel underfoot told him that he had struck upon an alley.

25 Here he paused, and taking his crossbow from where he kept it concealed under his long tabard, he prepared it for instant action, and went forward once more with greater resolution and assurance. The path led him straight to the group of buildings.

## The House by the Shore

All seemed to be sorely dilapidated : the windows of the house were secured by crazy shutters ; the stables were open and empty ; there was no hay in the hay-loft, no corn in the corn-box. Any one would have supposed the place to be deserted ; but 5 Dick had good reason to think otherwise. He continued his inspection, visiting the offices, trying all the windows. At length he came round to the sea side of the house, and there, sure enough, there burned a pale light in one of the upper windows. 10

He stepped back a little way, till he thought he could see the movement of a shadow on the wall of the apartment. Then he remembered that in the stable his groping hand had rested for a moment on a ladder, and he returned with all dispatch to 15 bring it. The ladder was very short, but yet, by standing on the topmost round, he could bring his hands as high as the iron bars of the window ; and seizing these, he raised his body by main force until his eyes commanded the interior of the room. 20

Two persons were within : the first he readily knew to be Dame Hatch ; the second, a tall and beautiful and grave young lady, in a long, embroidered dress — could that be Joanna Sedley ? his old wood-companion, Jack, whom he had 25 thought to punish with a belt ?

He dropped back again to the top round of the

---

LINE 1. **dilapidated** : neglected, fallen into ruin. 15. **dispatch** : haste.



## The Black Arrow

ladder in a kind of amazement. He had never thought of his sweetheart as of so superior a being, and he was instantly taken with a feeling of diffidence. But he had little opportunity for thought.  
5 A low "Hist!" sounded from close by, and he hastened to descend the ladder.

"Who goes?" he whispered.

"Greensheve," came the reply, in tones similarly guarded.

10 "What want ye?" asked Dick.

"The house is watched, Master Shelton," returned the outlaw. "We are not alone to watch it; for even as I lay on my belly on the wall I saw men prowling in the dark, and heard them whistle  
15 softly one to the other."

"By my sooth," said Dick, "but this is passing strange! Were they not men of Sir Daniel's?"

"Nay, sir, that they were not," returned Greensheve, "for if I have eyes in my head, every man-  
20 Jack of them weareth me a white badge in his bonnet, something checkered with dark."

"White, checkered with dark?" repeated Dick. "Faith, 'tis a badge I know not. It is none of this country's badges. Well, an that be so, let us slip  
25 as quietly forth from this garden as we may; for here we are in an evil posture for defense. Beyond all question there are men of Sir Daniel's in that

---

LINE 3. *diffidence*: shyness.

## The House by the Shore

house, and to be taken between two shots is a beggarman's position. Take me this ladder; I must leave it where I found it."

They returned the ladder to the stable, and groped their way to the place where they had entered.

Capper had taken Greensheve's position on the cope, and now he leaned down his hand, and, first one and then the other, pulled them up.

Cautiously and silently they dropped again upon the other side; nor did they dare to speak until they had returned to their old ambush in the gorse.

"Now, John Capper," said Dick, "back with you to Shoreby, even as for your life. Bring me instantly what men ye can collect. Here shall be the rendezvous; or if the men be scattered and the day be near at hand before they muster, let the place be something farther back, and by the entering in of the town. Greensheve and I lie here to watch. Speed ye, John Capper, and the saints aid you to dispatch! And now, Greensheve," he continued, as soon as Capper had departed, "let thou and I go round about the garden in a wide circuit. I would fain see whether thine eyes betrayed thee."

Keeping well outwards from the wall, and profiting by every height and hollow, they passed about two sides, beholding nothing. On the third side

---

LINE 16. **rendezvous**: place for meeting.

## The Black Arrow

the garden wall was built close upon the beach, and to preserve the distance necessary to their purpose, they had to go some way down upon the sands. Although the tide was still pretty far out, 5 the surf was so high, and the sands so flat, that at each breaker a great sheet of froth and water came careering over the expanse, and Dick and Greensheve made this part of their inspection wading, now to the ankles, and now as deep as to the knees, 10 in the salt and icy waters of the German Ocean.

Suddenly, against the comparative whiteness of the garden wall, the figure of a man was seen, like a faint Chinese shadow, violently signaling with both arms. As he dropped again to the earth, 15 another arose a little farther on and repeated the same performance. And so, like a silent watchword, these gesticulations made the round of the beleaguered garden.

“They keep good watch,” Dick whispered.

20 “Let us back to land, good master,” answered Greensheve. “We stand here too open; for, look ye, when the seas break heavy and white out there behind us, they shall see us plainly against the foam.”

25 “Ye speak sooth,” returned Dick. “Ashore with us, right speedily.”

---

LINE 10. German Ocean: North Sea.

## CHAPTER II

### A Skirmish in the Dark

THOROUGHLY drenched and chilled, the two adventurers returned to their position in the gorse.

"I pray Heaven that Capper make good speed!" said Dick. "I vow a candle to St. Mary of Shoreby if he come before the hour!" 5

"Y' are in a hurry, Master Dick?" asked Greensheve.

"Ay, good fellow," answered Dick; "for in that house lieth my lady, whom I love, and who should these be that lie about her secretly by night? Un- 10 friends for sure!"

"Well," returned Greensheve, "an John come speedily, we shall give a good account of them. They are not two score at the outside — I judge so by the spacing of their sentries — and, taken 15 where they are, lying so widely, one score would scatter them like sparrows. And yet, Master Dick, an she be in Sir Daniel's power already, it will little hurt that she should change into another's. Who should these be?" 20

"I do suspect the Lord of Shoreby," Dick replied. "When came they?"

"They began to come, Master Dick," said Green-



## The Black Arrow

sheve, "about the time ye crossed the wall. I had not lain there the space of a minute ere I marked the first of the kraves crawling round the corner."

The last light had been already extinguished in  
5 the little house when they were wading in the wash of the breakers, and it was impossible to predict at what moment the lurking men about the garden wall might make their onslaught. Of two evils, Dick preferred the lesser. He preferred that  
10 Joanna should remain under the guardianship of Sir Daniel rather than pass into the clutches of Lord Shoreby; and his mind was made up, if the house should be assaulted, to come at once to the relief of the besieged.

15 But the time passed, and still there was no movement. From quarter of an hour to quarter of an hour the same signal passed about the garden wall, as if the leader desired to assure himself of the vigilance of his scattered followers; but in every other  
20 particular the neighborhood of the little house lay undisturbed.

Presently Dick's reinforcements began to arrive. The night was not yet old before nearly a score of men crouched beside him in the gorse.

25 Separating these into two bodies, he took the command of the smaller himself, and entrusted the larger to the leadership of Greensheve.

"Now, Kit," said he to this last, "take me your men to the near angle of the garden wall upon the

## A Skirmish in the Dark

beach. Post them strongly, and wait till that ye hear me falling on upon the other side. It is those upon the sea-front that I would fain make certain of, for there will be the leader. The rest will run; even let them. And now, lads, let no man draw an arrow; ye will but hurt friends. Take to the steel, and keep to the steel; and if we have the uppermost, I promise every man of you a gold noble when I come to mine estate."

Out of the odd collection of broken men, thieves, 10 murderers, and ruined peasantry whom Duckworth had gathered together to serve the purposes of his revenge, some of the boldest and the most experienced in war had volunteered to follow Richard Shelton. The service of watching Sir Daniel's 15 movements in the town of Shoreby had from the first been irksome to their temper, and they had of late begun to grumble loudly and threaten to disperse. The prospect of a sharp encounter and possible spoils restored them to good humor, and 20 they joyfully prepared for battle.

Their long tabards thrown aside, they appeared, some in plain green jerkins, and some in stout leathern jacks; under their hoods many wore bonnets strengthened by iron plates; and for of- 25 fensive armor, swords, daggers, a few stout boarspears, and a dozen of bright bills, put them in a posture to engage even regular feudal troops. The bows, quivers, and tabards were concealed

## The Black Arrow

among the gorse, and the two bands set resolutely forward.

Dick, when he had reached the other side of the house, posted his six men in a line, about twenty yards from the garden wall, and took position himself a few paces in front. Then they all shouted with one voice, and closed upon the enemy.

These, lying widely scattered, stiff with cold, and taken at unawares, sprang stupidly to their feet, and stood undecided. Before they had time to get their courage about them, or even to form an idea of the number and mettle of their assailants, a similar shout of onslaught sounded in their ears from the far side of the enclosure. Thereupon they gave themselves up for lost and ran.

In this way the two small troops of the men of the Black Arrow closed upon the sea-front of the garden wall, and took a part of the strangers, as it were, between two fires; while the whole of the remainder ran for their lives in different directions, and were soon scattered in the darkness.

For all that the fight was but beginning. Dick's outlaws, although they had the advantage of the surprise, were still considerably outnumbered by the men they had surrounded. The tide had flowed in the meanwhile; the beach was narrowed to a strip; and on this wet field, between the surf and the garden wall, there began, in the darkness, a doubtful, furious, and deadly contest.

## A Skirmish in the Dark

The strangers were well armed; they fell in silence upon their assailants; and the affray became a series of single combats. Dick, who had come first into the mellay, was engaged by three; the first he cut down at the first blow, but the other two<sup>5</sup> coming upon him hotly he was fain to give ground before their onset. One of these two was a huge fellow, almost a giant for stature, and armed with a two-handed sword, which he brandished like a switch. Against this opponent, with his reach of<sup>10</sup> arm and the length and weight of his weapon, Dick and his bill were quite defenseless; and had the other continued to join vigorously in the attack, the lad must have indubitably fallen. This second man, however, less in stature and slower in his<sup>15</sup> movements, paused for a moment to peer about him in the darkness, and to give ear to the sounds of the battle.

The giant still pursued his advantage, and still Dick fled before him, spying for his chance. Then<sup>20</sup> the huge blade flashed and descended, and the lad, leaping on one side and running in, slashed sideways and upwards with his bill. A roar of agony responded, and before the wounded man could raise his formidable weapon, Dick, twice repeating<sup>25</sup> his blow, had brought him to the ground.

The next moment he was engaged upon more

---

LINE 4. **mellay**: hand-to-hand fighting. 14. **indubitably**: surely.



## The Black Arrow

equal terms with his second pursuer. Here there was no great difference in size, and though the man, fighting with sword and dagger against a bill, and being wary and quick of fence, had a certain superiority of arms, Dick more than made it up by his greater agility on foot. Neither at first gained any obvious advantage; but the older man was still insensibly profiting by the ardor of the younger to lead him where he would; and presently Dick found that they had crossed the whole width of the beach, and were now fighting above the knees in the spume and bubble of the breakers. Here his own superior activity was rendered useless; he found himself more or less at the discretion of his foe; yet a little, and he had his back turned upon his own men, and saw that this adroit and skilful adversary was bent upon drawing him farther and farther away.

Dick ground his teeth. He determined to decide the combat instantly; and when the wash of the next wave had ebbed and left them dry, he rushed in, caught a blow upon his bill, and leaped right at the throat of his opponent. The man went down backwards, with Dick still upon the top of him; and the next wave, speedily succeeding the last, buried him below a rush of water.

While he was still submerged, Dick forced his dagger from his grasp, and rose to his feet victorious.

---

LINE 4. wary: shrewd. 12. spume: foam.

## A Skirmish in the Dark

"Yield ye!" he said. "I give you life."

"I yield me," said the other, getting to his knees. "Ye fight, like a young man, ignorantly and foolhardily; but, by the array of the saints, ye fight bravely!"

5

Dick turned to the beach. The combat was still raging doubtfully in the night; over the hoarse roar of the breakers steel clanged upon steel, and cries of pain and the shout of battle resounded.

"Lead me to your captain, youth," said the conquered knight. "It is fit this butchery should cease."

"Sir," replied Dick, "so far as these brave fellows have a captain, the poor gentleman who here addresses you is he."

15

"Call off your dogs, then, and I will bid my villains hold," returned the other.

There was something noble both in the voice and manner of his late opponent, and Dick instantly dismissed all fears of treachery.

20

"Lay down your arms, men!" cried the stranger knight. "I have yielded me, upon promise of life."

The tone of the stranger was one of absolute command, and almost instantly the din and confusion of the mellay ceased.

"Lawless," cried Dick, "are ye safe?"

"Ay," cried Lawless, "safe and hearty."

"Light me the lantern," said Dick.

## The Black Arrow

“Is not Sir Daniel here?” inquired the knight.

“Sir Daniel?” echoed Dick. “Now, by the rood, I pray not. It would go ill with me if he were.”

5 “Ill with *you*, fair sir?” inquired the other. “Nay, then, if ye be not of Sir Daniel’s party, I profess I comprehend no longer. Wherefore, then, fell ye upon mine ambush? In what quarrel, my young and very fiery friend? To what earthly purpose? And, to make a clear end of questioning, to  
10 what good gentleman have I surrendered?”

But before Dick could answer, a voice spoke in the darkness from close by. Dick could see the speaker’s black and white badge, and the respectful  
15 salute which he addressed to his superior.

“My lord,” said he, “if these gentlemen be unfriends to Sir Daniel, it is a pity, indeed, we should have been at blows with them; but it were tenfold greater that either they or we should linger here.  
20 The watchers in the house — unless they be all dead or deaf — have heard our hammering this quarter-hour ago; instantly they will have signaled to the town; and unless we be the livelier in our departure, we are like to be taken, both  
25 of us, by a fresh foe.”

“Hawksley is in the right,” added the lord. “How please ye, sir? Whither shall we march?”

“Nay, my lord,” said Dick, “go where you will for me. I do begin to suspect we have some ground

## A Skirmish in the Dark

of friendship, and if, indeed, I began our acquaintance somewhat ruggedly, I would not churlishly continue. Let us, then, separate, my lord, you laying your right hand in mine; and at the hour and place that ye shall name, let us encounter and agree."

"Y' are too trustful, boy," said the other, "but this time your trust is not misplaced. I will meet you at the point of day at St. Bride's Cross. Come, lads, follow!"

The strangers disappeared from the scene with a rapidity that seemed suspicious; and, while the outlaws fell to the congenial task of rifling the dead bodies, Dick made once more the circuit of the garden wall to examine the front of the house. In a little upper loophole of the roof he beheld a light set; and as it would certainly be visible in town from the back windows of Sir Daniel's mansion, he doubted not that this was the signal feared by Hawksley, and that ere long the lances of the Knight of Tunstall would arrive upon the scene.

He put his ear to the ground, and it seemed to him as if he heard a jarring and hollow noise from townward. Back to the beach he went hurrying. But the work was already done; the last body was disarmed and stripped to the skin, and four fellows were already wading seaward to commit it to the mercies of the deep.

A few minutes later, when there debouched out



## The Black Arrow

of the nearest lanes of Shoreby some two score horsemen, hastily arrayed and moving at the gallop of their steeds, the neighborhood of the house beside the sea was entirely silent and deserted.

5 Meanwhile, Dick and his men had returned to the alehouse of the Goat and Bagpipes to snatch some hours of sleep before the morning tryst.

---

LINE 7. tryst: meeting.

## CHAPTER III

### St. Bride's Cross

ST. BRIDE'S CROSS stood a little way back from Shoreby, on the skirts of Tunstall Forest. Two roads met: one, from Holywood across the forest; one, that road from Risingham down which we saw the wrecks of a Lancastrian army fleeing in disorder. Here the two joined issue, and went on together down the hill to Shoreby; and a little back from the point of junction, the summit of a little knoll was crowned by the ancient and weather-beaten cross. 10

Here, then, about seven in the morning, Dick arrived. It was as cold as ever; the earth was all grey and silver with the hoarfrost, and the day began to break in the east with many colors of purple and orange. 15

Dick set him down upon the lowest step of the cross, wrapped himself well in his tabard, and looked vigilantly upon all sides. He had not long to wait. Down the road from Holywood a gentleman in very rich and bright armor, and wearing over that a surcoat of the rarest furs, came pacing 20

---

LINE 21. **surcoat**: a loose outer coat worn over armor.

## The Black Arrow

on a splendid charger. Twenty yards behind him followed a clump of lancers: but these halted as soon as they came in view of the trysting-place, while the gentleman in the fur surcoat continued  
5 to advance alone.

His visor was raised, and showed a countenance of great command and dignity, answerable to the richness of his attire and arms. And it was with some confusion of manner that Dick arose from the  
10 cross and stepped down the bank to meet his prisoner.

“I thank you, my lord, for your exactitude,” he said, louting very low. “Will it please your lordship to set foot to earth?”

15 “Are ye here alone, young man?” inquired the other.

“I was not so simple,” answered Dick; “and, to be plain with your lordship, the woods upon either hand of this cross lie full of mine honest  
20 fellows lying on their weapons.”

“Y’ ’ave done wisely,” said the lord. “It pleaseth me the rather, since last night ye fought foolhardily, and more like a savage Saracen lunatic than any Christian warrior. But it becomes not  
25 me to complain that had the undermost.”

“Ye had the undermost indeed, my lord, since ye so fell,” returned Dick; “but had the waves not

---

LINE 13. louting: bowing.



“ And it was with some confusion of manner that Dick arose from the cross.”





## St. Bride's Cross

holpen me, it was I that should have had the worst. Ye were pleased to make me yours with several dagger marks, which I still carry. And in fine, my lord, methinks I had all the danger, as well as all the profit, of that little blindman's medley on the beach."

"Y' are shrewd enough to make light of it, I see," returned the stranger.

"Nay, my lord, not shrewd," replied Dick, "in that I shoot at no advantage to myself. But when, by the light of this new day, I see how stout a knight hath yielded, not to my arms alone, but to fortune, and the darkness, and the surf — and how easily the battle had gone otherwise, with a soldier so untried and rustic as myself — think it not strange, my lord, if I feel confounded with my victory."

"Ye speak well," said the stranger. "Your name?"

"My name, an't like you, is Shelton," answered Dick.

"Men call me the Lord Foxham," added the other.

"Then, my lord, and under your good favor, ye are guardian to the sweetest maid in England," replied Dick; "and for your ransom, and the ransom of such as were taken with you on the beach,

---

LINE 1. *holpen*: helped. 5. *medley*: skirmish.

## The Black Arrow

there will be no uncertainty of terms. I pray you, my lord, of your good-will and charity, yield me the hand of my mistress, Joan Sedley; and take ye, upon the other part, your liberty, the liberty of  
5 these your followers, and (if ye will have it) my gratitude and service till I die."

"But are ye not ward to Sir Daniel? Methought, if y' are Harry Shelton's son, that I had heard it so reported," said Lord Foxham.

10 "Will it please you, my lord, to alight? I would fain tell you fully who I am, how situate, and why so bold in my demands. Beseech you, my lord, take place upon these steps, hear me to a full end, and judge me with allowance."

15 And so saying, Dick lent a hand to Lord Foxham to dismount; led him up the knoll to the cross; installed him in the place where he had himself been sitting; and standing respectfully before his noble prisoner, related the story of his fortunes up  
20 to the events of the evening before.

Lord Foxham listened gravely, and, when Dick had done, "Master Shelton," he said, "ye are a most fortunate-unfortunate young gentleman; but what fortune y' 'ave had, that ye have amply  
25 merited; and what unfortune, ye have noways deserved. Be of a good cheer; for ye have made a friend who is devoid neither of power nor favor.

---

LINE 11. **how situate**: in what circumstances. 14. **allow-  
ance**: tolerance.

## St. Bride's Cross

For yourself, although it fits not for a person of your birth to herd with outlaws, I must own ye are both brave and honorable; very dangerous in battle, right courteous in peace; a youth of excellent disposition and brave bearing. For your estates, ye will never see them till the world shall change again; so long as Lancaster hath the strong hand, so long shall Sir Daniel enjoy them for his own. For my ward, it is another matter; I had promised her before to a gentleman, a kinsman of my house, one Hamley; the promise is old ——”

“Ay, my lord, and now Sir Daniel hath promised her to my Lord Shoreby,” interrupted Dick. “And his promise, for all it is but young, is still the likelier to be made good.”

15

“’Tis the plain truth,” returned his lordship. “And considering, moreover, that I am your prisoner, upon no better composition than my bare life, and over and above that, that the maiden is unhappily in other hands, I will so far consent. Aid me with your good fellows ——”

“My lord,” cried Dick, “they are these same outlaws that ye blame me for consorting with.”

“Let them be what they will, they can fight,” returned Lord Foxham. “Help me, then; and if between us we regain the maid, upon my knightly honor, she shall marry you!”

---

LINE 23. *consorting*: associating.



## The Black Arrow

Dick bent his knee before his prisoner ; but he, leaping up lightly from the cross, caught the lad up and embraced him like a son.

“Come,” he said, “an y’ are to marry Joan, we s must be early friends.”

## CHAPTER IV

### *The Good Hope*

AN hour thereafter, Dick was back at the Goat and Bagpipes, breaking his fast, and receiving the report of his messengers and sentries. Duckworth was still absent from Shoreby; and this was frequently the case, for he played many parts in the world, shared many different interests, and conducted many various affairs. He had founded that fellowship of the Black Arrow, as a ruined man longing for vengeance and money; and yet among those who knew him best, he was thought to be the agent and emissary of the great King-maker of England, Richard, Earl of Warwick.

In his absence, at any rate, it fell upon Richard Shelton to command affairs in Shoreby; and, as he sat at meat, his mind was full of care, and his face heavy with consideration. It had been determined, between him and the Lord Foxham, to make one bold strike that evening, and, by brute force, to set Joanna free. The obstacles, however, were many; and as one after another of his scouts arrived, each brought him more uncomfortable news.

## The Black Arrow

Sir Daniel was alarmed by the skirmish of the night before. He had increased the garrison of the house in the garden; but not content with that, he had stationed horsemen in all the neighboring lanes, so that he might have instant word of any movement. Meanwhile, in the court of his mansion, steeds stood saddled, and the riders, armed at every point, awaited but the signal to ride.

The adventure of the night appeared more and more difficult of execution, till suddenly Dick's countenance lightened.

"Lawless!" he cried, "you that were a shipman, can ye steal me a ship?"

"Master Dick," replied Lawless, "if ye would back me, I would agree to steal York Minster."

Presently after, these two set forth and descended to the harbor. It was a considerable basin, lying among sand-hills, and surrounded with patches of down, ancient ruinous lumber, and tumble-down slums of the town. Many decked ships and many open boats either lay there at anchor, or had been drawn up on the beach. A long duration of bad weather had driven them from the high seas into the shelter of the port; and the great trooping of black clouds, and the cold squalls that followed one another, now with a sprinkling of dry snow, now in a mere swoop of wind, promised

---

LINE 15. Minster: cathedral.

## The Good Hope

no improvement, but rather threatened a more serious storm in the immediate future.

The seamen, in view of the cold and the wind, had for the most part slunk ashore, and were now roaring and singing in the shoreside taverns. Many 5 of the ships already rode unguarded at their anchors; and as the day wore on, and the weather offered no appearance of improvement, the number was continually being augmented. It was to these deserted ships, and, above all, to those of 10 them that lay far out, that Lawless directed his attention; while Dick, seated upon an anchor that was half embedded in the sand, and giving ear, now to the rude, potent, and boding voices of the gale, and now to the hoarse singing of the shipmen 15 in a neighboring tavern, soon forgot his immediate surroundings and concerns in the agreeable recollection of Lord Foxham's promise.

He was disturbed by a touch upon his shoulder. It was Lawless, pointing to a small ship that lay 20 somewhat by itself, and within but a little of the harbor mouth, where it heaved regularly and smoothly on the entering swell. A pale gleam of winter sunshine fell at that moment on the vessel's deck, relieving her against a bank of scowling 25 cloud; and in this momentary glitter Dick could see a couple of men hauling the skiff alongside.

---

LINE 14. *potent*: powerful.



## The Black Arrow

“There, sir,” said Lawless, “mark ye it well! There is the ship for to-night.”

Presently the skiff put out from the vessel’s side, and the two men, keeping her head well to the wind, pulled lustily for shore. Lawless turned to a loiterer.

“How call ye her?” he asked, pointing to the little vessel.

“They call her the *Good Hope*, of Dartmouth,”  
10 replied the loiterer. “Her captain, Arblaster by name. He pulleth the bow oar in yon skiff.”

This was all that Lawless wanted. Hurriedly thanking the man, he moved round the shore to a certain sandy creek, for which the skiff was heading.  
15 There he took up his position, and as soon as they were within earshot, opened fire on the sailors of the *Good Hope*.

“What! Gossip Arblaster!” he cried. “Why, ye be well met; nay, gossip, ye be right well met,  
20 upon the rood! And is that the *Good Hope*? Ay, I would know her among ten thousand! — a sweet shear, a sweet boat! But marry come up, my gossip, will ye drink! I have come into mine estate, which doubtless ye remember to have heard  
25 on. I am now rich; I have left to sail upon the sea; I do sail now, for the most part, upon spiced ale. Come, fellow, thy hand upon’t! Come, drink with an old shipfellow!”

---

LINE 22. *shear*: cutter, vessel.

## The Good Hope

Skipper Arblaster, a long-faced, elderly, weather-beaten man, with a knife hanging about his neck by a plaited cord, and for all the world like any modern seaman in his gait and bearing, had hung back in obvious amazement and distrust. But the name of an estate, and a certain air of tipsified simplicity and goodfellowship which Lawless very well affected, combined to conquer his suspicious jealousy; his countenance relaxed, and he at once extended his open hand and squeezed that of the outlaw in a formidable grasp.

"Nay," he said, "I cannot mind you. But what o' that? I would drink with any man, gossip, and so would my man Tom. Man Tom," he added, addressing his follower, "here is my gossip, whose name I cannot mind, but no doubt a very good seaman. Let's go drink with him and his shore friend."

Lawless led the way, and they were soon seated in an alehouse, which, as it was very new, and stood in an exposed and solitary station, was less crowded than those nearer to the center of the port. It was but a shed of timber, much like a block-house in the backwoods of to-day, and was coarsely furnished with a press or two, a number of naked benches, and boards set upon barrels to play the part of tables. In the middle, and besieged by half a hundred violent draughts, a fire of wreck-wood blazed and vomited thick smoke.

## The Black Arrow

“Ay, now,” said Lawless, “here is a shipman’s joy — a good fire and a good stiff cup ashore, with foul weather without and an off-sea gale a-snoring in the roof! Here’s to the *Good Hope*! May she  
5 ride easy!”

“Ay,” said Skipper Arblaster, “’tis good weather to be ashore in, that is sooth. Man Tom, how say ye to that? Gossip, ye speak well, though I can never think upon your name; but ye speak very  
10 well. May the *Good Hope* ride easy! Amen.”

“Friend Dickon,” resumed Lawless, addressing his commander, “ye have certain matters on hand, unless I err? Well, prithee be about them incontinently. For here I be with the choice of all good  
15 company, two tough old shipmen; and till that ye return I will go warrant these brave fellows will bide here and drink me cup for cup. We are not like shoremen, we old, tough tarry-Johns!”

“It is well meant,” returned the skipper. “Ye  
20 can go, boy; for I will keep your good friend and my good gossip company till curfew — ay, and by St. Mary, till the sun get up again! For, look ye, when a man hath been long enough at sea, the salt getteth me into the clay upon his bones; and let  
25 him drink a draw-well, he will never be quenched.”

Thus encouraged upon all hands, Dick rose, saluted his company, and going forth again into the

---

LINE 13. incontinently: immediately. 18. tarry-Johns: Jack-tars. 25. drink a draw-well: drain a flask.

## The *Good Hope*

gusty afternoon, got him as speedily as he might to the Goat and Bagpipes. Thence he sent word to my Lord Foxham that, so soon as ever the evening closed, they would have a stout boat to keep the sea in. And then leading along with him a couple 5 of outlaws who had some experience of the sea, he returned himself to the harbor and the little sandy creek.

The skiff of the *Good Hope* lay among many others, from which it was easily distinguished by 10 its extreme smallness and fragility. Indeed, when Dick and his two men had taken their places, and begun to put forth out of the creek into the open harbor, the little cockle dipped into the swell and staggered under every gust of wind, like a thing 15 upon the point of sinking.

The *Good Hope*, as we have said, was anchored far out, where the swell was heaviest. No other vessel lay nearer than several cables' length; those that were the nearest were themselves entirely de- 20 serted; and as the skiff approached, a thick flurry of snow and a sudden darkening of the weather further concealed the movements of the outlaws from all possible espial. In a trice they had leaped upon the heaving deck, and the skiff was dancing 25 at the stern. The *Good Hope* was captured.

She was a good stout boat, decked in the bows

---

LINE 14. cockle: a frail, light boat. 24. espial: spying.  
In a trice: in an instant.



## The Black Arrow

and amidships, but open in the stern. She carried one mast, and was rigged between a felucca and a lugger. It would seem that Skipper Arblaster had made an excellent venture, for the hold was full of  
5 pieces of French wine; and in the little cabin, besides the Virgin Mary in the bulkhead which proved the captain's piety, there were many lock-fast chests and cupboards, which showed him to be rich and careful.

10 A dog, who was the sole occupant of the vessel, furiously barked and bit the heels of the boarders; but he was soon kicked into the cabin, and the door shut upon his just resentment. A lamp was lit and fixed in the shrouds to mark the vessel clearly  
15 from the shore; one of the wine-pieces in the hold was broached, and a cup of excellent Gascony emptied to the adventure of the evening; and then, while one of the outlaws began to get ready his bow and arrows and prepare to hold the ship against  
20 all comers, the other hauled in the skiff and got overboard, where he held on, waiting for Dick.

“Well, Jack, keep me a good watch,” said the young commander, preparing to follow his subordinate. “Ye will do right well.”

25 “Why,” returned Jack, “I shall do excellent well indeed, so long as we lie here; but once we put the nose of this poor ship outside the harbor —

---

LINE 2. **felucca**: a small sailing vessel. 3. **lugger**: a small fishing boat. 14. **shrouds**: rigging of a ship.

## The *Good Hope*

See, there she trembles! Nay, the poor shrew heard the words, and the heart misgave her in her oak-tree ribs. But look, Master Dick! how black the weather gathers!”

The darkness ahead was, indeed, astonishing. 5 Great billows heaved up out of the blackness, one after another; and one after another the *Good Hope* buoyantly climbed, and giddily plunged upon the further side. A thin sprinkle of snow and thin flakes of foam came flying, and powdered the deck; 10 and the wind harped dismally among the rigging.

“In sooth, it looketh evilly,” said Dick. “But what cheer! ’Tis but a squall, and presently it will blow over.” But, in spite of his words, he was depressingly affected by the bleak disorder 15 of the sky and the wailing and fluting of the wind; and as he got over the side of the *Good Hope* and made once more for the landing-creek with the best speed of oars, he crossed himself devoutly, and recommended to Heaven the lives of all who 20 should adventure on the sea.

At the landing-creek there had already gathered about a dozen of the outlaws. To these the skiff was left, and they were bidden embark without delay.

A little further up the beach Dick found Lord 25 Foxham hurrying in quest of him, his face concealed with a dark hood, and his bright armor covered by a long russet mantle of a poor appearance.

## The Black Arrow

“Young Shelton,” he said, “are ye for sea, then, truly?”

“My lord,” replied Richard, “they lie about the house with horsemen; it may not be reached from  
5 the land side without alarm; and, Sir Daniel once advertised of our adventure, we can no more carry it to a good end than, saving your presence, we could ride upon the wind. Now, in going round by sea, we do run some peril by the elements; but,  
10 what much outweigheth all, we have a chance to make good our purpose and bear off the maid.”

“Well,” returned Lord Foxham, “lead on. I will, in some sort, follow you for shame’s sake; but I own I would I were in bed.”

15 “Here, then,” said Dick. “Hither we go to fetch our pilot.”

And he led the way to the rude alehouse where he had given rendezvous to a portion of his men. Some of these he found lingering round the door  
20 outside; others had pushed more boldly in, and, choosing places as near as possible to where they saw their comrade, gathered close about Lawless and the two shipmen. These, to judge by the distempered countenance and cloudy eye, had  
25 long since gone beyond the boundaries of moderation; and as Richard entered, closely followed by Lord Foxham, they were all three tuning up an old, pitiful sea-ditty, to the chorus of the wailing of the gale.

## The Good Hope

The young leader cast a rapid glance about the shed. The fire had just been replenished, and gave forth volumes of black smoke, so that it was difficult to see clearly in the further corners. It was plain, however, that the outlaws very largely <sup>5</sup> outnumbered the remainder of the guests. Satisfied upon this point, in case of any failure in the operation of his plan, Dick strode up to the table and resumed his place upon the bench.

"Hey?" cried the skipper, tipsily, "who are ye, <sup>10</sup> hey?"

"I want a word with you without, Master Arblaster," returned Dick, "and here is what we shall talk of." And he showed him a gold noble in the glimmer of the firelight. 15

The shipman's eyes burned, although he still failed to recognize our hero.

"Ay, boy," he said, "I am with you. Gossip, I will be back anon. Drink fair, gossip"; and, taking Dick's arm to steady his uneven steps, he <sup>20</sup> walked to the door of the alehouse.

As soon as he was over the threshold, ten strong arms had seized and bound him; and in two minutes more, with his limbs trussed one to another, and a good gag in his mouth, he had been tumbled <sup>25</sup> neck and crop into a neighboring hay-barn. Presently, his man Tom, similarly secured, was tossed

---

LINE 24. **trussed**: bound.



## The Black Arrow

beside him, and the pair were left to their uncouth reflections for the night.

And now, as the time for concealment had gone by, Lord Foxham's followers were summoned by  
5 a preconcerted signal, and the party, boldly taking possession of as many boats as their numbers required, pulled in a flotilla for the light in the rigging of the ship. Long before the last man had climbed to the deck of the *Good Hope*, the sound of furious  
10 shouting from the shore showed that a part, at least, of the seamen had discovered the loss of their skiffs.

But it was now too late, whether for recovery or revenge. Out of some forty fighting men now mus-  
15 tered in the stolen ship, eight had been to sea, and could play the part of mariners. With the aid of these, a slice of sail was got upon her. The cable was cut. Lawless, vacillating on his feet, and still shouting the chorus of sea-ballads, took the long  
20 tiller in his hands; and the *Good Hope* began to flit forward into the darkness of the night, and to face the great waves beyond the harbor-bar.

Richard took his place beside the weather rigging. Except for the ship's own lantern, and for some  
25 lights in Shoreby town, that were already fading to leeward, the whole world of air was as black as

---

LINE 5. **preconcerted**: formerly arranged. 7. **flotilla**: a fleet of small vessels. 26. **leeward**: the direction in which the wind was blowing the vessel.

## The *Good Hope*

in a pit. Only from time to time, as the *Good Hope* swooped dizzily down into the valley of the rollers, a crest would break — a great cataract of snowy foam would leap in one instant into being — and, in an instant more, would stream into the wake and vanish.

Many of the men lay holding on and praying aloud; many more were sick, and had crept into the bottom, where they sprawled among the cargo. And what with the extreme violence of the motion, <sup>10</sup> and the continued drunken bravado of Lawless, still shouting and singing at the helm, the stoutest heart on board may have nourished a shrewd mis-giving as to the result.

But Lawless, as if guided by an instinct, steered <sup>15</sup> the ship across the breakers, struck the lee of a great sand-bank, where they sailed for a while in smooth water, and presently after laid her alongside a rude, stone pier, where she was hastily made fast, and lay ducking and grinding in the dark. <sup>20</sup>

## CHAPTER V

### *The Good Hope (Continued)*

THE pier was not far distant from the house in which Joanna lay; it now only remained to get the men on shore, to surround the house with a strong party, burst in the door and carry off the  
5 captive. They might then regard themselves as done with the *Good Hope*; it had placed them on the rear of their enemies; and the retreat, whether they should succeed or fail in the main enterprise, would be directed with a greater measure of hope  
10 in the direction of the forest and my Lord Foxham's reserve.

To get the men on shore, however, was no easy task; many had been sick, all were pierced with cold; the promiscuity and disorder on board had  
15 shaken their discipline; the movement of the ship and the darkness of the night had cowed their spirits. They made a rush upon the pier; my lord, with his sword drawn on his own retainers, must throw himself in front; and this impulse of  
20 rabblement was not restrained without a certain clamor of voices, highly to be regretted in the case.

---

LINE 14. *promiscuity*: confusion. 16. *cowed*: terrified:  
20. *rablement*: a noisy, disorderly mob.

## The Good Hope

When some degree of order had been restored, Dick, with a few chosen men, set forth in advance. The darkness on shore, by contrast with the flashing of the surf, appeared before him like a solid body; and the howling and whistling of the gales drowned any lesser noise.

He had scarce reached the end of the pier, however, when there fell a lull of the wind; and in this he seemed to hear on shore the hollow footing of horses and the clash of arms. Checking his immediate followers, he passed forward a step or two alone, even setting foot upon the down; and here he made sure he could detect the shape of men and horses moving. A strong discouragement assailed him. If their enemies were really on the watch, if they had beleaguered the shoreward end of the pier, he and Lord Foxham were taken in a posture of very poor defense — the sea behind, the men jostled in the dark upon a narrow causeway. He gave a cautious whistle, the signal previously agreed upon.

It proved to be a signal for more than he desired. Instantly there fell, through the black night, a shower of arrows sent at a venture; and so close were the men huddled on the pier that more than one was hit, and the arrows were answered with cries of both fear and pain. In this first discharge, Lord Foxham was struck down; Hawksley had him carried on board again at once; and his men,



## The Black Arrow

during the brief remainder of the skirmish, fought (when they fought at all) without guidance. That was, perhaps, the chief cause of the disaster which made haste to follow.

5 At the shore end of the pier, for perhaps a minute, Dick held his own with a handful; one or two were wounded upon either side; steel crossed steel; nor had there been the least signal of advantage, when, in the twinkling of an eye, the tide turned  
10 against the party from the ship. Someone cried out that all was lost; the men were in the very humor to lend an ear to a discomfortable counsel; the cry was taken up. "On board, lads, for your lives!" cried another. A third, with the true in-  
15 stinct of the coward, raised that inevitable report on all retreats: "We are betrayed!" And in a moment the whole mass of men went surging and jostling backward down the pier, turning their defenseless backs on their pursuers and piercing the  
20 night with craven outcry.

One coward thrust off the ship's stern, while another still held her by the bows. The fugitives leaped, screaming, and were hauled on board, or fell back and perished in the sea. Some were cut  
25 down upon the pier by the pursuers. Many were injured on the ship's deck in the blind haste and terror of the moment, one man leaping upon an-

---

LINE 20. **craven**: cowardly.

## The *Good Hope*

other, and a third on both. At last, and whether by design or accident, the bows of the *Good Hope* were liberated; and the ever-ready Lawless, who had maintained his place at the helm through all the hurly-burly by sheer strength of body and a liberal use of the cold steel, instantly clapped her on the proper tack. The ship began to move once more forward on the stormy sea, its scuppers running blood, its deck heaped with fallen men, sprawling and struggling in the dark. 10

Thereupon, Lawless sheathed his dagger and turning to his next neighbor, "I have left my mark on them, gossip," said he, "the yelping, coward hounds."

Now, while they were all leaping and struggling 15 for their lives, the men had not appeared to observe the rough shoves and cutting stabs with which Lawless had held his post in the confusion. But perhaps they had already begun to understand somewhat more clearly, or perhaps another ear 20 had overheard the helmsman's speech.

Panic-stricken troops recover slowly, and men who have just disgraced themselves by cowardice, as if to wipe out the memory of their fault, will sometimes run straight into the opposite extreme 25 of insubordination. So it was now; and the same men who had thrown away their weapons and been

---

LINE 7. **tack**: course. 8. **scuppers**: holes or gutters bordering a deck, to let water run off.

## The Black Arrow

hauled, feet foremost, into the *Good Hope*, began to cry out upon their leaders, and demand that someone should be punished.

This growing ill-feeling turned upon Lawless.

5 In order to get a proper offing, the old outlaw had put the head of the *Good Hope* to seaward.

“What!” bawled one of the grumblers, “he carrieth us to seaward!”

“’Tis sooth,” cried another. “Nay, we are be-  
10 trayed for sure.”

And they all began to cry out in chorus that they were betrayed, and in shrill tones and with abominable oaths bade Lawless go about-ship and bring them speedily ashore. Lawless, grinding his teeth,  
15 continued in silence to steer the true course, guiding the *Good Hope* among the formidable billows. To their empty terrors, as to their dishonorable threats, between drink and dignity he scorned to make reply. The malcontents drew together a  
20 little abaft the mast, and it was plain they were like barnyard cocks, “crowing for courage.” Presently they would be fit for any extremity of injustice or ingratitude. Dick began to mount by the ladder, eager to interpose; but one of the out-  
25 laws, who was also something of a seaman, got beforehand.

“Lads,” he began, “y’ are right wooden heads,

---

LINE 5. *offing*: distance out at sea. 9. *sooth*: true.  
19. *malcontents*: dissatisfied ones. 20. *abaft*: behind.

## The *Good Hope*

I think. For to get back, by the mass, we must have an offing, must we not? And this old Lawless ——”

Someone struck the speaker on the mouth, and the next moment, as a fire springs among dry straw, 5 he was felled upon the deck, trampled under the feet, and despatched by the daggers of his cowardly companions. At this the wrath of Lawless rose and broke.

“Steer yourselves,” he bellowed, with a curse; 10 and, careless of the result, he left the helm.

The *Good Hope* was, at that moment, trembling on the summit of a swell. She subsided, with sickening velocity, upon the further side. A wave, like a great black bulwark, hove immedi- 15 ately in front of her; and, with a staggering blow, she plunged headforemost through that liquid hill. The green water passed right over her from stem to stern, as high as a man’s knees; the sprays ran higher than the mast; and she rose again upon 20 the other side, with an appalling tremulous indecision, like a beast that has been deadly wounded.

Six or seven of the malcontents had been carried bodily overboard; and as for the remainder, when they found their tongues again it was to bellow to 25 the saints and wail upon Lawless to come back and take the tiller.

---

LINE 15. **bulwark**: barrier, wall.



## The Black Arrow

Nor did Lawless wait to be twice bidden. The terrible result of his fling of just resentment sobered him completely. He knew, better than anyone on board, how nearly the *Good Hope* had gone 5 bodily down below their feet; and he could tell, by the laziness with which she met the sea, that the peril was by no means over.

Dick, who had been thrown down by the concussion and half drowned, rose wading to his knees 10 in the swamped well of the stern, and crept to the old helmsman's side.

"Lawless," he said, "we do all depend on you; y' are a brave, steady man, indeed, and crafty in the management of ships; I shall put three sure 15 men to watch upon your safety."

"Bootless, my master, bootless," said the steersman, peering forward through the dark. "We come every moment somewhat clearer of these sandbanks; with every moment, then, the sea 20 packeth upon us heavier, and for all these whimperers, they will presently be on their backs. For, my master, 'tis a right mystery, but true, there never yet was a bad man that was a good shipman. None but the honest and the bold can endure me 25 this tossing of a ship."

"Nay, Lawless," said Dick, laughing, "that is a right shipman's byword, and hath no more of sense than the whistle of the wind. But, prithee, how go we? Do we lie well? Are we in good case?"

## The Good Hope

“Master Shelton,” replied Lawless, “I have been a Grey Friar — I praise fortune — an archer, a thief, and a shipman. Of all these coats, I had the best fancy to die in the Grey Friar’s as ye may readily conceive, and the least fancy to die in John 5 Shipman’s tarry jacket; and that for two excellent good reasons: first, that the death might take a man suddenly; and second for the horror of that great salt smother and welter under my foot here” — and Lawless stamped with his foot. 10  
“Howbeit,” he went on, “an I die not a sailor’s death, and that this night, I shall owe a tall candle to our Lady.”

“Is it so?” asked Dick.

“It is right so,” replied the outlaw. “Do ye 15 not feel how heavy and dull she moves upon the waves? Do ye not hear the water washing in her hold? She will scarce mind the rudder even now. Bide till she has settled a bit lower; and she will either go down below your boots like a stone image, 20 or drive ashore here, under our lee, and come all to pieces like a twist of string.”

“Ye speak with a good courage,” returned Dick. “Ye are not then appalled?”

“Why, master,” answered Lawless, “if ever a 25 man had an ill crew to come to port with, it is I —

---

LINE 9. **welter**: rolling waves. 21. **lee**: the quarter toward which the wind blows.

## The Black Arrow

a renegade friar, a thief, and all the rest on't. Well, ye may wonder, but I keep a good hope in my wallet; and if that I be to drown, I will drown with a bright eye, Master Shelton, and a steady  
5 hand."

Dick returned no answer, but he was surprised to find the old vagabond of so resolute a temper, and fearing some fresh violence or treachery, set forth upon his quest for three sure men. The  
10 great bulk of the men had now deserted the deck, which was continually wetted with the flying sprays, and where they lay exposed to the shrewdness of the winter wind. They had gathered, instead, into the hold of the merchandise, among the  
15 butts of wine, and lighted by two swinging lanterns.

Here a few kept up the form of revelry, and toasted each other deep in Arblaster's Gascony wine. But as the *Good Hope* continued to tear  
20 through the smoking waves, and toss her stem and stern alternately high in air and deep into white foam, the number of these jolly companions diminished with every moment and with every lurch. Many sat apart, tending their hurts, but the  
25 majority were already prostrated with sickness, and lay moaning in the bilge.

Greensheve, Cuckow, and a young fellow of

---

LINE 1. **renegade friar**: a friar who deserted his orders.  
26. **bilge**: bottom of ship.

## The *Good Hope*

Lord Foxham's whom Dick had already remarked for his intelligence and spirit, were still, however, both fit to understand and willing to obey. These Dick set as a bodyguard about the person of the steersman, and then, with a last look at the black sky and sea, he turned and went below into the cabin, whither Lord Foxham had been carried by his servants.



## CHAPTER VI

### *The Good Hope (Concluded)*

THE moans of the wounded baron blended with the wailing of the ship's dog. The poor animal, whether he was merely sick at heart to be separated from his friends, or whether he indeed recognized  
5 some peril in the laboring of the ship, raised his cries, like minute-guns, above the roar of wave and weather, and the more superstitious of the men heard, in these sounds, the knell of the *Good Hope*.

Lord Foxham had been laid in a berth, upon a  
10 fur cloak. A little lamp burned dim before the Virgin in the bulkhead, and by its glimmer Dick could see the pale countenance and hollow eyes of the hurt man.

"I am sore hurt," said he. "Come near to my  
15 side, young Shelton; let there be one by me who, at least, is gentle born; for after having lived nobly and richly all the days of my life, this is a sad pass that I should get my hurt in a little ferreting skirmish, and die here, in a foul, cold ship upon the  
20 sea, among broken men and churls."

"Nay, my lord," said Dick, "I pray rather to

---

LINE 20. **churls**: common, rude fellows.

## The Good Hope

the saints that ye will recover you of your hurt, and come soon and sound ashore."

"How?" demanded his lordship. "Come sound ashore? There is, then, a question of it?"

"The ship laboreth — the sea is grievous and so contrary," replied the lad; "and by what I can learn of my fellow that steereth us, we shall do well, indeed, if we come dryshod to land."

"Ha!" said the baron, gloomily, "thus shall every terror attend upon the passage of my soul! 10 Sir, pray rather to live hard, that ye may die easy, than to be fooled and fluted all through life, as to the pipe and tabor, and, in the last hour, be plunged among misfortunes! Howbeit, I have that upon my mind that must not be delayed. We have no 15 priest aboard?"

"None," replied Dick.

"Here, then, to my secular interests," resumed Lord Foxham; "ye must be as good a friend to me dead as I found you a gallant enemy when I 20 was living. I fall in an evil hour for me, for England, and for them that trusted me. My men are being brought by Hamley — he that was your rival; they will rendezvous in the long room at Hollywood; this ring from off my finger will accredit 25 you to represent mine orders; and I shall write, besides, two words upon this paper, bidding Hamley

---

LINE 12. *fluted*: entertained, pampered. 13. *tabor*: drum.  
18. *secular*: worldly.

## The Black Arrow

yield to you the damsel. Will ye obey? I know not."

"But, my lord, what orders?" inquired Dick.

"Ay," quoth the baron, "ay — the orders,"  
5 and he looked upon Dick with hesitation. "Are ye Lancaster or York?" he asked, at length.

"I shame to say it," answered Dick, "I can scarce clearly answer. But so much I think is certain: since I serve with Ellis Duckworth, I  
10 serve the House of York. Well, if that be so, I declare for York."

"It is well," returned the other; "it is exceeding well. For, truly, had ye said Lancaster, I wot not for the world what I had done. But sith ye  
15 are for York, follow me. I came hither but to watch these lords at Shoreby, while mine excellent young lord, Richard of Gloucester, prepareth a sufficient force to fall upon and scatter them. I have made me notes of their strength, what watch  
20 they keep, and how they lie; and these I was to deliver to my young lord on Sunday, an hour before noon, at St. Bride's Cross beside the forest. This tryst I am not like to keep, but I pray you, of courtesy, to keep it in my stead; and see that not  
25 pleasure, nor pain, tempest, wound, not pestilence

---

LINE 17. Gloucester. Stevenson added this note: "At the date of this story, Richard Crookback could not have been created Duke of Gloucester; but for clearness, with the reader's leave, he shall so be called."

## The Good Hope

withhold you from the hour and place, for the welfare of England lieth upon this cast."

"I do soberly take this upon me," said Dick. "In so far as in me lieth, your purpose shall be done." 5

"It is good," said the wounded man. "My lord Duke shall order you farther, and if ye obey him with spirit and goodwill, then is your fortune made. Give me the lamp a little nearer to mine eyes, till that I write these words for you." 10

He wrote a note, "to his worshipful kinsman, Sir John Hamley"; and then a second, which he left without external superscription.

"This is for the Duke," he said. "The word is 'England and Edward,' and the counter, 'Eng- 15 land and York.'"

"And Joanna, my lord?" asked Dick.

"Nay, ye must get Joanna how ye can," replied the baron. "I have named you for my choice in both these letters; but ye must get her for your- 20 self, boy. I have tried, as ye see here before you, and have lost my life. More could no man do."

By this time the wounded man began to be very weary; and Dick, putting the precious papers in his bosom, bade him be of good cheer, and left him 25 to repose.

The day was beginning to break, cold and blue,

---

LINE 15. counter: countersign.



## The Black Arrow

with flying squalls of snow. Close under the lee of the *Good Hope*, the coast lay in alternate rocky headlands and sandy bays; and further inland the wooded hill-tops of Tunstall showed along the sky.  
5 Both the wind and the sea had gone down; but the vessel wallowed deep, and scarce rose upon the waves.

Lawless was still fixed at the rudder; and by this time nearly all the men had crawled on deck,  
10 and were now gazing, with blank faces, upon the inhospitable coast.

“Are we going ashore?” asked Dick.

“Ay,” said Lawless, “unless we get first to the bottom.”

15 And just then the ship rose so languidly to meet a sea, and the water weltered so loudly in her hold, that Dick involuntarily seized the steersman by the arm.

“By the mass!” cried Dick, as the bows of the  
20 *Good Hope* reappeared above the foam, “I thought we had foundered, indeed; my heart was at my throat.”

In the waist, Greensheve, Hawksley, and the better men of both companies were busy breaking  
25 up the deck to build a raft; and to these Dick joined himself, working the harder to drown the memory of his predicament. But, even as he

---

LINE 23. **waist**: the middle section of a ship.

## The Good Hope

worked, every sea that struck the poor ship, and every one of her dull lurches, as she tumbled wallowing among the waves, recalled him with a horrid pang to the immediate proximity of death.

5

Presently, looking up from his work, he saw that they were close in below a promontory; a piece of ruinous cliff, against the base of which the sea broke white and heavy, almost overplumbed the deck; and, above that again, a house appeared, crowning  
10 a down.

Inside the bay, the seas ran gaily, raised the *Good Hope* upon their foam-flecked shoulders, carried her beyond the control of the steersman, and in a moment dropped her with a great concussion on the  
15 sand, and began to break over her, half-mast high, and roll her to and fro. Another great wave followed, raised her again, and carried her yet farther in; and then a third succeeded, and left her far inshore of the more dangerous breakers,  
20 wedged upon a bank.

“Now, boys,” cried Lawless, “the saints have had a care of us, indeed. The tide ebbs; let us but sit down and drink a cup of wine, and before half an hour ye may all march me ashore as safe as on  
25 a bridge.”

A barrel was broached, and, sitting in what shelter they could find from the flying snow and spray, the shipwrecked company handed the cup

## The Black Arrow

around, and sought to warm their bodies and restore their spirits.

Dick, meanwhile, returned to Lord Foxham, who lay in great perplexity and fear, the floor of his cabin washing knee-deep in water, and the lamp, which had been his only light, broken and extinguished by the violence of the blow.

“My lord,” said young Shelton, “fear not at all; the saints are plainly for us; the seas have cast us high upon a shoal, and as soon as the tide hath somewhat ebbed, we may walk ashore upon our feet.”

It was nearly an hour before the vessel was sufficiently deserted by the ebbing sea, and they could set forth for the land, which appeared dimly before them through a veil of driving snow.

Upon a hillock on one side of their way a party of men lay huddled together, suspiciously observing the movements of the new arrivals.

“They might draw near and offer us some comfort,” Dick remarked.

“Well, an they come not to us, let us even turn aside to them,” said Hawksley. “The sooner we come to a good fire and a dry bed, the better for my poor lord.”

But they had not moved far in the direction of the hillock before the men, with one consent, rose

---

LINE 10. shoal: a sand-bank.

## The Good Hope

suddenly to their feet, and poured a flight of well-directed arrows on the shipwrecked company.

“Back! Back!” cried his lordship. “Beware, in Heaven’s name, that ye reply not!”

“Nay,” cried Greensheve, pulling an arrow <sup>5</sup> from his leather jack. “We are in no posture to fight, it is certain, being drenching wet, dog-weary, and three-parts frozen; but, for the love of old England, what aileth them to shoot thus cruelly on their poor country people in distress?” 10

“They take us to be French pirates,” answered Lord Foxham. “In these most troublesome and degenerate days we cannot keep our own shores of England; but our old enemies, whom we once chased on sea and land, do now range at pleasure, <sup>15</sup> robbing and slaughtering and burning. It is the pity and reproach of this poor land.”

The men upon the hillock lay, closely observing them, while they trailed upward from the beach, and wound inland among desolate sand-hills; for <sup>20</sup> a mile or so they even hung upon the rear of the march, ready, at a sign, to pour another volley on the weary and dispirited fugitives; and it was only when, striking at length upon a firm high-road, Dick began to call his men to some more <sup>25</sup> martial order, that these jealous guardians of the coast of England silently disappeared among the

---

LINE 26. **martial**: military.



## The Black Arrow

snow. They had done what they desired; they had protected their own homes and farms, their own families and cattle; and their private interest being thus secured, it mattered not the weight of a  
5 straw to any one of them, although the Frenchmen should carry blood and fire to every other parish in the realm of England.

## BOOK IV: THE DISGUISE

### CHAPTER I

#### The Den

THE place where Dick had struck the line of a high-road was not far from Holywood, and within nine or ten miles of Shoreby-on-the-Till; and here, after making sure that they were pursued no longer, the two bodies separated. Lord Foxham's fol-<sup>5</sup> lowers departed, carrying their wounded master towards the comfort and security of the great abbey; and Dick, as he saw them wind away and disappear in the thick curtain of the falling snow, was left alone with near upon a dozen outlaws, the <sup>10</sup> last remainder of his troop of volunteers.

Some were wounded; one and all were furious at their ill-success and long exposure; and though they were now too cold and hungry to do more, they grumbled and cast sullen looks upon their <sup>15</sup> leaders. Dick emptied his purse among them, leaving himself nothing; thanked them for the courage they had displayed, though he could have found it more readily in his heart to rate them for poltroonery; and having thus somewhat softened <sup>20</sup>

---

LINE 20. *poltroonery*: cowardice.

## The Black Arrow

the effect of his prolonged misfortune, dispatched them to find their way, either severally or in pairs, to Shoreby and the Goat and Bagpipes.

For his own part, influenced by what he had seen  
5 on board of the *Good Hope*, he chose Lawless to  
be his companion on the walk. The snow was  
falling, without pause or variation, in one even,  
blinding cloud; the wind had been strangled, and  
now blew no longer; and the whole world was  
10 blotted out and sheeted down below that silent  
inundation. There was great danger of wander-  
ing by the way and perishing in drifts; and Law-  
less, keeping half a step in front of his companion,  
and holding his head forward like a hunting dog  
15 upon the scent, inquired his way of every tree,  
and studied out their path as though he were  
conning a ship among dangers.

About a mile into the forest they came to a place  
where several ways met, under a grove of lofty  
20 and contorted oaks. Even in the narrow hori-  
zon of the falling snow, it was a spot that could  
not fail to be recognized; and Lawless evidently  
recognized it with particular delight.

“Now, Master Richard,” said he, “an y’ are  
25 not too proud to be the guest of a man who is  
neither a gentleman by birth nor so much as a  
good Christian, I can offer you a cup of wine and

---

LINE 17. *conning*: steering. 20. *contorted*: twisted into  
strange shapes.

## The Den

a good fire to melt the marrow in your frozen bones."

"Lead on, Will," answered Dick. "A cup of wine and a good fire! Nay, I would go a far way round to see them." 5

Lawless turned aside under the bare branches of the grove, and, walking resolutely forward for some time, came to a steepish hollow or den, that had now drifted a quarter full of snow. On the verge a great beech-tree hung, precariously rooted; and 10 here the old outlaw, pulling aside some bushy under-wood, bodily disappeared into the earth.

The beech had, in some violent gale, been half uprooted, and had torn up a considerable stretch of turf; and it was under this that old Lawless 15 had dug out his forest hiding-place. The roots served him for rafters, the turf was his thatch, for walls and floor he had his mother the earth. Rude as it was, the hearth in one corner, blackened by fire, and the presence in another of a large oaken 20 chest well fortified with iron, showed it at one glance to be the den of a man, and not the burrow of a digging beast.

Though the snow had drifted at the mouth and sifted in upon the floor of this earth-cavern, yet 25 was the air much warmer than without; and when Lawless had struck a spark, and the dry furze

---

LINE 10. *precariously*: insecurely.



## The Black Arrow

bushes had begun to blaze and crackle on the hearth, the place assumed, even to the eye, an air of comfort and of home.

With a sigh of great contentment Lawless spread  
5 his broad hands before the fire, and seemed to breathe the smoke.

“Here, then,” he said, “is this old Lawless’s rabbit-hole; pray Heaven there come no terrier! Far have I rolled hither and thither, and here and  
10 about, since that I was fourteen years of mine age and first ran away from mine abbey, with the sacrist’s gold chain and a mass-book that I sold for four marks. I have been in England and France and Burgundy, and in Spain, too, on a pilgrimage for  
15 my poor soul; and upon the sea, which is no man’s country. But here is my place, Master Shelton. This is my native land, this burrow in the earth. Come rain or wind — and whether it’s April, and the birds all sing, and the blossoms fall about my  
20 bed, or whether it’s winter, and I sit alone with my good gossip the fire, and robin redbreast twitters in the woods — here is my church and market, my wife and child. It’s here I come back to, and it’s here, so please the saints, that I would like to die.”

25 “’Tis a warm corner, to be sure,” replied Dick, “and a pleasant, and a well hid.”

“It had need to be,” returned Lawless, “for an they found it, Master Shelton, it would break my heart. But here,” he added, burrowing with his

## The Den

stout fingers in the sandy floor, "here is my wine cellar, and ye shall have a flask of excellent strong stingo."

Sure enough, after but a little digging, he produced a big leathern bottle of about a gallon, nearly 5 three parts full of a very heady and sweet wine; and when they had drunk to each other comradely, and the fire had been replenished and blazed up again, the pair lay at full length, thawing and steaming, and divinely warm. 10

"Master Shelton," observed the outlaw, "y' 'ave had two mischances this last while, and y' are like to lose the maid — do I take it aright?"

"Aright," returned Dick, nodding his head.

"Well, now," continued Lawless, "hear an old 15 fool that hath been nigh-hand everything, and seen nigh-hand all. Ye go too much on other people's errands, Master Dick. Ye go on Ellis's; but he desireth rather the death of Sir Daniel. Ye go on Lord Foxham's; well — the saints preserve him! — 20 doubtless he meaneth well. But go ye upon your own, good Dick. Come right to the maid's side. Court her, lest that she forget you. Be ready; and when the chance shall come, off with her at the saddlebow." 25

"Ay, but, Lawless, beyond doubt she is now in Sir Daniel's own mansion," answered Dick.

---

LINE 3. *stingo*: old beer.

## The Black Arrow

“Thither, then, go we,” replied the outlaw.

Dick stared at him.

“Nay, I mean it,” nodded Lawless. “And if y’ are of so little faith, and stumble at a word, see  
5 here!”

And the outlaw, taking a key from about his neck, opened the oak chest, and dipping and groping deep among its contents, produced first a friar’s robe, and next a girdle of rope; and then a huge rosary  
10 of wood, heavy enough to be counted as a weapon.

“Here,” he said, “is for you. On with them!”

And then, when Dick had clothed himself in this clerical disguise, Lawless produced some colors and a pencil, and proceeded, with the great-  
15 est cunning, to disguise his face. The eyebrows he thickened and produced; to the mustache, which was yet hardly visible, he rendered a like service; while, by a few lines around his eye, he changed the expression and increased the apparent age of  
20 this young monk.

“Now,” he resumed, “when I have done the like, we shall make as bonny a pair of friars as the eye could wish. Boldly to Sir Daniel’s we shall go, and there be hospitably welcomed for the love of  
25 Mother Church.”

“And how, dear Lawless,” cried the lad, “shall I repay you?”

---

LINE 16. produced: lengthened.

## The Den

“Tut, brother,” replied the outlaw, “I do naught but for my pleasure. Mind not for me. I am one, by the mass, that mindeth for himself. When that I lack, I have a long tongue and a voice like the monastery bell — I do ask, my son; and <sup>5</sup> where asking faileth, I do most usually take.”

The old rogue made a humorous grimace; and although Dick was displeased to lie under so great favors to so equivocal a personage, he was yet unable to restrain his mirth. 10

With that, Lawless returned to the big chest, and was soon similarly disguised; but below his gown, Dick wondered to observe him conceal a sheaf of black arrows.

“Wherefore do ye that?” asked the lad. <sup>15</sup>  
“Wherefore arrows, when ye take no bow?”

“Nay,” replied Lawless, lightly, “’tis like there will be heads broke — not to say backs — ere you and I win sound from where we’re going to; and if any fall, I would our fellowship should come by the <sup>20</sup> credit on’t. A black arrow, Master Dick, is the seal of our abbey; it showeth you who writ the bill.”

“An ye prepare so carefully,” said Dick, “I have here some papers that, for mine own sake, and the interest of those that trusted me, were better left <sup>25</sup> behind than found upon my body. Where shall I conceal them, Will?”

---

LINE 9. *equivocal*: questionable.



## The Black Arrow

“Nay,” replied Lawless, “I will go forth into the wood and whistle me three verses of a song; meanwhile, do you bury them where ye please, and smooth the sand upon the place.”

5 “Never!” cried Richard. “I trust you, man. I were base indeed if I trusted you not.”

“Brother, y’ are but a child,” replied the old outlaw, pausing and turning his face upon Dick from the threshold of the den. “I am a kind old  
10 Christian, and no traitor to men’s blood, and no sparer of mine own in a friend’s jeopardy. But fool, child, I am a thief by trade and birth and habit. If my bottle were empty and my mouth dry, I would rob you, dear child, as sure as I love, honor,  
15 and admire your parts and person! Can it be clearer spoken? No.”

And he stumped forth through the bushes with a snap of his big fingers.

Dick, thus left alone, after a wondering thought  
20 upon the inconsistencies of his companion’s character, hastily produced, reviewed, and buried his papers. One only he reserved to carry along with him, since it in nowise compromised his friends, and yet might serve him, in a pinch, against Sir Daniel.  
25 That was the knight’s own letter to Lord Wensleydale, sent by Throgmorton, on the morrow of the defeat at Risingham, and found next day by Dick upon the body of the messenger.

Then treading down the embers of the fire, Dick

## The Den

left the den, and rejoined the old outlaw, who stood awaiting him under the leafless oaks, and was already beginning to be powdered by the falling snow. Each looked upon the other, and each laughed, so thorough and so droll was the disguise. 5

“Yet I would it were but summer and a clear day,” grumbled the outlaw, “that I might see myself in the mirror of a pool. There be many of Sir Daniel’s men that know me; and if we fell to be recognized, there might be two words for you, my 10 brother, but as for me, in a paternoster-while, I should be kicking in a rope’s-end.”

Thus they set forth together along the road to Shoreby, which, in this part of its course, kept near along the margin of the forest, coming forth from 15 time to time in the open country, and passing beside poor folks’ houses and small farms.

Presently, at sight of one of these, Lawless pulled up.

“Brother Martin,” he said, in a voice capitally 20 disguised, and suited to his monkish robe, “let us enter and seek alms, from these poor sinners. *Pax vobiscum!* Ay,” he added, in his own voice, “’tis as I feared; I have somewhat lost the whine of it; and by your leave, good Master Shelton, ye must 25 suffer me to practice in these country places, before that I risk my fat neck by entering Sir Daniel’s.

---

LINE 22. *Pax vobiscum*: “Peace be with you!”

## The Black Arrow

But look ye a little, what an excellent thing it is to be a Jack-of-all-trades! An I had not been a shipman, ye had infallibly gone down in the *Good Hope*; an I had not been a thief, I could not have  
5 painted me your face; and but that I had been a Grey Friar, and sung loud in the choir, and ate hearty at the board, I could not have carried this disguise, but the very dogs would have spied us out and barked at us for shams."

10 He was by this time close to the window of the farm, and he rose on his tip-toes and peeped in.

"Nay," he cried, "better and better. We shall here try our false faces with a vengeance, and have a merry jest on Brother Capper to boot."

15 And so saying he opened the door and led the way into the house.

Three of their own company sat at the table, greedily eating. Their daggers, stuck beside them in the board, and the black and menacing looks  
20 which they continued to shower upon the people of the house, proved that they owed their entertainment rather to force than to favor. On the two monks, who now, with a sort of humble dignity, entered the kitchen of the farm, they seemed to  
25 turn with a particular resentment; and one — it was John Capper in person — who seemed to play the leading part, instantly and rudely ordered them away.

"We want no beggars here!" he cried.

## The Den

But another — although he was as far from recognizing Dick and Lawless — inclined to more moderate counsels.

“Not so,” he cried. “We be strong men, and take; these be weak, and crave; but in the latter <sup>5</sup> end these shall be uppermost and we below. Mind him not, my father; but come, drink of my cup, and give me a benediction.”

“Y’ are men of a light mind, carnal and accursed,” said the monk. “Now, may the saints <sup>10</sup> forbid that ever I should drink with such companions! But here, for the pity I bear to sinners, here I do leave you a blessed relic, the which, for your soul’s interest, I bid you kiss and cherish.”

So far Lawless thundered upon them like a <sup>15</sup> preaching friar; but with these words he drew from under his robe a black arrow, tossed it on the board in front of the three startled outlaws, turned in the same instant, and, taking Dick along with him, was out of the room and out of sight among the <sup>20</sup> falling snow before they had time to utter a word or move a finger.

“So,” he said, “we have proved our false faces, Master Shelton. I will now adventure my poor carcass where ye please.” <sup>25</sup>

“Good!” returned Richard. “It irks me to be doing. Set we on for Shoreby!”



## CHAPTER II

### “ In Mine Enemies’ House ”

SIR DANIEL’S residence in Shoreby was a tall, commodious, plastered mansion, framed in carven oak, and covered by a low-pitched roof of thatch. To the back there stretched a garden, full of fruit-trees, alleys, and thick arbors, and overlooked from the far end by the tower of the abbey church.

The house might contain, upon a pinch, the retinue of a greater person than Sir Daniel; but even now it was filled with hubbub. The court  
10 rang with arms and horseshoe-iron; the kitchen roared with cookery like a bees’-hive; minstrels, and the players of instruments, and the cries of tumblers, sounded from the hall. Sir Daniel, in his profusion, in the gaiety and gallantry of his  
15 establishment, rivalled with Lord Shoreby, and eclipsed Lord Risingham.

All guests were made welcome. Minstrels, tumblers, players of chess, the sellers of relics, medicines, perfumes and enchantments, and along with  
20 these every sort of priest, friar or pilgrim, were

---

LINE 2. **commodious**: spacious, roomy. 3. **thatch**: straw or reeds. 13. **tumblers**: acrobats.

## “In Mine Enemies’ House”

made welcome to the lower table, and slept together in the ample lofts, or on the bare boards of the long dining-hall.

On the afternoon following the wreck of the *Good Hope*, the buttery, the kitchens, the stables, the covered cartshed that surrounded two sides of the court, were all crowded by idle people, partly belonging to Sir Daniel’s establishment, and attired in his livery of murrey and blue, partly nondescript strangers attracted to the town by greed, and received by the knight through policy, and because it was the fashion of the time.

The snow, which still fell without interruption, the extreme chill of the air, and the approach of night, combined to keep them under shelter. Wine, ale, and money were all plentiful; many sprawled gambling in the straw of the barn, many were still drunken from the noontide meal. To the eye of a modern it would have looked like the sack of a city; to the eye of a contemporary it was like any other rich and noble household at a festive season.

Two monks — a young and an old — had arrived late, and were now warming themselves at a bonfire in a corner of the shed. A mixed crowd surrounded them — jugglers, mountebanks, and soldiers; and with these the elder of the two had soon engaged so brisk a conversation, and exchanged so

---

LINE 9. **nondescript**: difficult to describe, undesirable.  
25. **mountebanks**: venders of wares.

## The Black Arrow

many loud guffaws and country witticisms, that the group momentarily increased in number.

The younger companion, in whom the reader has already recognized Dick Shelton, sat from the first somewhat backward, and gradually drew himself away. He listened, indeed, closely, but he opened not his mouth; and by the grave expression of his countenance, he made but little account of his companion's pleasantries.

10 At last his eye, which traveled continually to and fro, and kept a guard upon all the entrances of the house, lit upon a little procession entering by the main gate and crossing the court in an oblique direction. Two ladies, muffled in thick furs, led  
15 the way, and were followed by a pair of waiting-women and four stout men-at-arms. The next moment they had disappeared within the house; and Dick, slipping through the crowd of loiterers in the shed, was already giving hot pursuit.

20 "The taller of these twain was Lady Brackley," he thought; "and where Lady Brackley is, Joan will not be far."

At the door of the house the four men-at-arms had ceased to follow, and the ladies were now  
25 mounting the stairway of polished oak, under no better escort than that of the two waiting-women. Dick followed close behind. It was already the dusk of the day; and in the house the darkness of the night had almost come. On the stair-landings

## “In Mine Enemies’ House”

torches flared in iron holders; down the long tap-  
estried corridors a lamp burned by every door.  
And where the door stood open, Dick could look  
in upon arras-covered walls, and rush-bescattered  
floors, glowing in the light of the wood-fires. 5

Two floors were passed, and at every landing the  
younger and shorter of the two ladies had looked  
back keenly at the monk. He, keeping his eyes  
lowered, and affecting the demure manners that  
suited his disguise, had but seen her once, and was 10  
unaware that he had attracted her attention.  
And now, on the third floor, the party separated,  
the younger lady continuing to ascend alone, the  
other, followed by the waiting-maids, descending  
the corridor to the right. 15

Dick mounted with a swift foot, and holding  
to the corner, thrust forth his head and followed  
the three women with his eyes. Without turning  
or looking behind them, they continued to descend  
the corridor. 20

“It is right well,” thought Dick. “Let me but  
know my Lady Brackley’s chamber, and it will go  
hard an I find not Dame Hatch upon an errand.”

And just then a hand was laid upon his shoulder,  
and, with a bound and a choked cry, he turned to 25  
grapple his assailant.

He was somewhat abashed to find, in the person  
whom he had so roughly seized, the short young  
lady in the furs. She, on her part, was shocked



## The Black Arrow

and terrified beyond expression, and hung trembling in his grasp.

“Madam,” said Dick, releasing her, “I cry you a thousand pardons; but I have no eyes behind, 5 and, by the mass, I could not tell ye were a maid.”

The girl continued to look at him, but, by this time, terror began to be succeeded by surprise, and surprise by suspicion. Dick, who could read these changes on her face, became alarmed for his 10 own safety in that hostile house.

“Fair maid,” he said affecting easiness, “suffer me to kiss your hand, in token ye forgive my roughness, and I will even go.”

“Y’ are a strange monk, young sir,” returned the 15 young lady, looking him both boldly and shrewdly in the face; “and now that my first astonishment hath somewhat passed away, I can spy the layman in each word you utter. What do ye here? Why are ye thus sacrilegiously tricked out? Come ye 20 in peace or war? And why spy ye after Lady Brackley like a thief?”

“Madam,” quoth Dick, “of one thing I pray ye to be very sure: I am no thief. And even if I come here in war, as in some degree I do, I make 25 no war upon fair maids, and I hereby entreat them to copy me so far, and to leave me be. For, indeed, fair mistress, cry out — if such be your pleasure — cry but once, and say what ye have seen, and the poor gentleman before you is merely a dead man.

## “In Mine Enemies’ House”

I cannot think ye would be cruel,” added Dick; and taking the girl’s hand gently in both of his, he looked at her with courteous admiration.

“Are ye then a spy — a Yorkist?” asked the maid. 5

“Madam,” he replied, “I am indeed a Yorkist, and in some sort, a spy. But that which bringeth me into this house, the same which will win for me the pity and interest of your kind heart, is neither of York nor Lancaster. I will wholly put my life in 10 your discretion. I am a lover, and my name ——”

But here the young lady clapped her hand suddenly upon Dick’s mouth, looked hastily up and down and east and west, and, seeing the coast clear, began to drag the young man, with great 15 strength and vehemence, upstairs.

“Hush!” she said, “and come. Shalt talk hereafter.”

Somewhat bewildered, Dick suffered himself to be pulled upstairs, bustled along a corridor, and 20 thrust suddenly into a chamber, lit, like so many of the others, by a blazing log upon the hearth.

“Now,” said the young lady, forcing him down upon a stool, “sit ye there and attend my sovereign good pleasure. I have life and death over you, 25 and I will not scruple to abuse my power. Look to yourself; y’ ’ave cruelly mauled my arm. He

---

LINE 16. **vehemence** : eagerness.

## The Black Arrow

knew not I was a maid, quoth he! Had he known I was a maid, he had ta'en his belt to me, forsooth!"

And with these words she whipped out of the room, and left Dick gaping with wonder, and not  
5 very sure if he were dreaming or awake.

"Ta'en my belt to her!" he repeated. "Ta'en my belt to her!" And the recollection of that evening in the forest flowed back upon his mind, and he once more saw Matcham's wincing body  
10 and beseeching eyes.

And then he was recalled to the dangers of the present. In the next room he heard a stir, as of a person moving; then followed a sigh, which sounded strangely near; and then the rustle of  
15 skirts and tap of feet once more began. As he stood hearkening, he saw the arras wave along the hall; there was the sound of a door being opened, the hangings divided, and, lamp in hand, Joanna Sedley entered the apartment.

20 She was attired in costly stuffs of deep and warm colors, such as befit the winter and the snow. Upon her head, her hair had been gathered together and became her as a crown. And she, who had seemed so little and so awkward in the attire of Matcham,  
25 was now tall like a young willow, and swam across the floor as though she scorned the drudgery of walking.

Without a start, without a tremor, she raised her lamp and looked at the young monk.

## “In Mine Enemies’ House”

“What make ye here, good brother?” she inquired. “Ye are doubtless ill-directed. Whom do ye require?” And she set her lamp upon the bracket.

“Joanna,” said Dick; and then his voice failed 5 him. “Joanna,” he began again, “ye said ye loved me; and the more fool I, but I believed it!”

“Dick!” she cried. “Dick!”

And then, to the wonder of the lad, this beautiful and tall young lady made but one step of it, 10 and threw her arms about his neck, and gave him a hundred kisses all in one.

“Oh, the fool fellow!” she cried. “Oh, dear Dick! Oh, if ye could see yourself! Alack!” she added, pausing, “I have spoilt you, Dick! I 15 have knocked some of the paint off. But that can be mended. What cannot be mended, Dick — or I much fear it cannot! — is my marriage with Lord Shoreby.”

“Is it decided, then?” asked the lad. 20

“To-morrow before noon, Dick, in the abbey church,” she answered, “John Matcham and Joanna Sedley both shall come to a right miserable end. There is no help in tears, or I could weep mine eyes out. I have not spared myself to pray, 25 but Heaven frowns on my petition. And, dear Dick — good Dick — but that ye can get me forth of this house before the morning, we must even kiss and say good-bye.”



## The Black Arrow

“Nay,” said Dick, “not I; I will never say that word. ’Tis like despair; but while there’s life, Joanna, there is hope. Yet will I hope. Ay, by the mass, and triumph! Look ye, now, when ye  
5 were but a name to me, did I not follow — did I not rouse good men — did I not stake my life upon the quarrel? An now that I have seen you for what ye are — the fairest maid and stateliest of England — think ye I would turn? — if the deep  
10 sea were there, I would straight through it; if the way were full of lions, I would scatter them like mice.”

“Ay,” she said, dryly, “ye make a great ado about a sky-blue robe!”

15 “Nay, Joan,” protested Dick, “’tis not alone the robe. But, lass, ye were disguised. Here am I disguised; and, to the proof, do I not cut a figure of fun — a right fool’s figure?”

20 “Ay, Dick, an’ that ye do!” she answered, smiling.

“Well, then!” he returned, triumphant. “So was it with you, poor Matcham, in the forest. In sooth, ye were a wench to laugh at. But now!”

So they ran on, holding each other by both hands,  
25 exchanging smiles and lovely looks, and melting minutes into seconds; and so they might have continued all night long. But presently there was a noise behind them; and they were aware of the short young lady, with her finger on her lips.

## “In Mine Enemies’ House”

“Saints!” she cried, “but what a noise ye keep! Can ye not speak in compass? And now, Joanna, my fair maid of the woods, what will ye give your gossip for bringing you your sweetheart?”

Joanna ran to her, by way of answer, and embraced her fiercely.

“And you, sir,” added the young lady, “what do ye give me?”

“Madam,” said Dick, “I would fain offer to pay you in the same money.” 10

“Come, then,” said the lady, “it is permitted you.”

But Dick, blushing like a peony, only kissed her hand.

“What ails ye at my face, fair sir?” she inquired, 15  
curtseying to the very ground; and, then, when Dick had at length and most tepidly embraced her, “Joanna,” she added, “your sweetheart is very backward under your eyes; but I warrant you, when first we met, he was more ready. I am all 20  
black and blue, wench; trust me never, if I be not black and blue! And now,” she continued, “have ye said your sayings? For I must speedily dismiss the paladin.”

But at this they both cried out that they had 25  
said nothing, that the night was still very young, and that they would not be separated so early.

---

LINE 2. **compass**: moderation. 24. **paladin**: excellent knight.

## The Black Arrow

“And supper?” asked the young lady. “Must we not go down to supper?”

“Nay, to be sure!” cried Joan. “I had forgotten.”

5 “Hide me, then,” said Dick, “put me behind the arras, shut me in a chest, or what ye will, so that I may be here on your return. Indeed, fair lady,” he added, “bear this in mind, that we are sore bested, and may never look upon each other’s face  
10 from this night forward till we die.”

At this the young lady melted; and when, a little after, the bell summoned Sir Daniel’s household to the board, Dick was planted very stiffly against the wall, at a place where a division in the  
15 tapestry permitted him to breath the more freely, and even to see into the room.

He had not been long in this position when he was somewhat strangely disturbed. The silence in that upper story of the house was broken only  
20 by the flickering of the flames and the hissing of a green log in the chimney; but presently, to Dick’s strained hearing, there came the sound of some one walking with extreme precaution; and soon after the door opened, and a little black-faced, dwarfish  
25 fellow, in Lord Shoreby’s colors, pushed first his head and then his crooked body into the chamber. His mouth was open, as though to hear the better; and his eyes, which were very bright, flitted restlessly and swiftly to and fro. He went round and

## “In Mine Enemies’ House”

round the room, striking here and there upon the hangings: but Dick, by a miracle, escaped his notice. Then he looked below the furniture, and examined the lamp; and at last, with an air of cruel disappointment, was preparing to go away as 5  
silently as he had come, when down he dropped upon his knees, picked up something from among the rushes on the floor, examined it, and with every signal of delight, concealed it in the wallet at his belt. 10

Dick’s heart sank, for the object in question was a tassel from his own girdle; and it was plain to him that this dwarfish spy, who took a malign delight in his employment, would lose no time in bearing it to his master, the baron. He was half- 15  
tempted to throw aside the arras, fall upon the scoundrel, and, at the risk of his life, remove the telltale token. And while he was still hesitating, a new cause of concern was added. A voice, hoarse and broken by drink, began to be audible from the 20  
stair; and presently after, uneven, wandering, and heavy footsteps sounded without along the passage.

“What make ye here, my merry men, among the greenwood shaws?” sang the voice. “What make ye here? Hey! sots, what make ye here!” it 25  
added, with a rattle of drunken laughter; and then once more breaking into song:

---

LINE 13. **malign**: evil.



## The Black Arrow

“If ye should drink the clary wine,  
Fat Friar John, ye friend o’ mine —  
If I should eat, and ye should drink,  
Who shall sing the mass, d’ye think?”

5 Lawless, alas! rolling drunk, was wandering the house, seeking for a corner wherein to slumber off the effects of his potations. Dick inwardly raged. The spy, at first terrified, had grown reassured as he found he had to deal with an intoxicated man,  
10 and now, with a movement of cat-like rapidity, slipped from the chamber, and was gone from Richard’s eyes.

What was to be done? If he lost touch of Lawless for the night he was left impotent, whether to  
15 plan or carry forth Joanna’s rescue. If, on the other hand, he dared to address the drunken outlaw, the spy might still be lingering within sight, and the most fatal consequences ensue.

It was, nevertheless, upon this last hazard that  
20 Dick decided. Slipping from behind the tapestry, he stood ready in the doorway of the chamber, with a warning hand upraised. Lawless, flushed crimson, with his eyes injected, vacillating on his feet, drew still unsteadily nearer. At last he  
25 hazily caught sight of his commander, and, in despite of Dick’s imperious signals, hailed him instantly and loudly by his name.

---

LINE 7. **potations**: excessive drinking. 14. **impotent**: powerless. 23. **vacillating**: unsteady.

## “In Mine Enemies’ House”

Dick leaped upon and shook the drunkard furiously.

“Beast!” he hissed — “beast, and no man! It is worse than treachery to be so witless. We may all be shent for thy sotting.” 5

But Lawless only laughed and staggered, and tried to clap young Shelton on the back.

And just then Dick’s quick ear caught a rapid brushing in the arras. He leaped towards the sound, and the next moment a piece of the wall- 10 hanging had been torn down, and Dick and the spy were sprawling together in its folds. Over and over they rolled, grappling for each other’s throat, and still baffled by the arras, and still silent in their deadly fury. But Dick was by much the stronger, 15 and soon the spy lay prostrate under his knee, and, with a single stroke of the long poniard, ceased to breathe.

---

LINE 17. *poniard*: a dagger.

## CHAPTER III

### The Dead Spy

THROUGHOUT this furious and rapid passage, Lawless had looked on helplessly, and even when all was over, and Dick, already re-arisen to his feet, was listening with the most passionate attention 5 to the distant bustle in the lower stories of the house, the old outlaw was still wavering on his legs like a shrub in a breeze of wind, and still stupidly staring on the face of the dead man.

“It is well,” said Dick, at length; “they have 10 not heard us, praise the saints! But, now, what shall I do with this poor spy? At least, I will take my tassel from his wallet.”

So saying, Dick opened the wallet; within he found a few pieces of money, the tassel, and a 15 letter addressed to Lord Wensleydale, and sealed with my Lord Shoreby’s seal. The name awoke Dick’s recollection; and he instantly broke the wax and read the contents of the letter. It was short, but, to Dick’s delight, it gave evident proof 20 that Lord Shoreby was treacherously corresponding with the House of York.

The young fellow usually carried his ink-horn and







“Lawless drew a black arrow from below his robe and pinned the paper in its place.”

## The Dead Spy

implements about him, and so now, bending a knee beside the body of the dead spy, he was able to write these words upon a corner of the paper :

My Lord of Shoreby, ye that writt the letter, wot ye why your man is ded ! But let me rede you, marry not. 5

JON AMEND-ALL.

He laid this paper on the breast of the corpse ; and then Lawless, who had been looking on upon these last maneuvers with some flickering returns of intelligence, suddenly drew a black arrow from 10 below his robe, and therewith pinned the paper in its place. The sight of this disrespect, or, as it almost seemed, cruelty to the dead, drew a cry of horror from young Shelton ; but the old outlaw only laughed. 15

“Nay, I will have the credit for mine order,” he hiccupped. “My jolly boys must have the credit on’t — the credit, brother” ; and then, shutting his eyes tight, and opening his mouth like a precentor, he began to thunder, in a formidable 20 voice :

“If ye should drink the clary wine —”

“Peace, sot !” cried Dick, and thrust him hard against the wall. “In two words — if so be that such a man can understand me who hath more 25 wine than wit in him — in two words, and, a-Mary’s

---

LINE 20. **precentor** : the leader of a church choir or congregation.

## The Black Arrow

name, begone out of this house, where, if ye continue to abide, ye will hang not only yourself, but me also! Faith, then, up foot! be yare, or, by the mass, I may forget that I am in some sort your  
5 captain, and in some your debtor! Go!"

The sham monk was now, in some degree, recovering the use of his intelligence; and the ring in Dick's voice, and the glitter in Dick's eye, stamped home the meaning of his words.

10 "By the mass," cried Lawless, "an I be not wanted, I can go," and he turned tipsily along the corridor and proceeded to flounder downstairs, lurching against the wall.

So soon as he was out of sight, Dick returned to  
15 his hiding-place, resolutely fixed to see the matter out. Wisdom, indeed, moved him to be gone; but love and curiosity were stronger.

Time passed slowly for the young man, bolt upright behind the arras. The fire in the room  
20 began to die down, and the lamp to burn low and to smoke. And still there was no word of the return of any one to these upper quarters of the house; still the faint hum and clatter of the supper party sounded from far below; and still, under the thick  
25 fall of the snow, Shoreby town lay silent upon every side.

At length, however, feet and voices began to

---

LINE 3. *yare*: quick.

## The Dead Spy

draw near upon the stair; and presently after several of Sir Daniel's guests arrived upon the landing, and, turning down the corridor, beheld the torn arras and the body of the spy.

Some ran forward and some back, and all together began to cry aloud.

At the sound of their cries, guests, men-at-arms, ladies, servants, and, in a word, all the inhabitants of that great house, came flying from every direction, and began to join their voices to the tumult.

Soon a way was cleared, and Sir Daniel came forth in person, followed by the bridegroom of the morrow, my Lord Shoreby.

"My lord," said Sir Daniel, "have I not told you of this knave Black Arrow? To the proof, behold it! There it stands, and, by the rood, my gossip, in a man of yours, or one that stole your colors?"

"In good sooth, it was a man of mine," replied Lord Shoreby, hanging back. "I would I had more such. He was keen as a beagle and secret as a mole."

"Ay, gossip, truly?" asked Sir Daniel, keenly. "And what came he smelling up so many stairs in my poor mansion? But he will smell no more."

"An 't please you, Sir Daniel," said one, "here

---

LINE 22. **beagle**: a small hound.



## The Black Arrow

is a paper written upon with some matter, pinned upon his breast."

"Give it me, arrow and all," said the knight. And when he had taken into his hand the shaft, he continued for some time to gaze upon it in a sullen musing. "Ay," he said, addressing Lord Shoreby, "here is a hate that followeth hard and close upon my heels. This black stick, or its just likeness, shall yet bring me down. And, gossip, suffer a plain knight to counsel you; and if these hounds begin to wind you, flee! 'Tis like a sickness — it still hangeth, hangeth upon the limbs. But let us see what they have written. It is as I thought, my lord; y' are marked, like an old oak, by the woodman; to-morrow or next day, by will come the axe. But what wrote ye in a letter?"

Lord Shoreby snatched the paper from the arrow, read it, crumpled it between his hands, and, overcoming the reluctance which had hitherto withheld him from approaching, threw himself on his knees beside the body and eagerly groped in the wallet.

He rose to his feet with a somewhat unsettled countenance.

"Gossip," he said, "I have indeed lost a letter here that much imported; and could I lay my hand upon the knave that took it, he should incontinently grace a halter. But let us, first of all,

---

LINE 26. *incontinently* : immediately.

## The Dead Spy

secure the issues of the house. Here is enough harm already, by St. George!"

Sentinels were posted close around the house and garden; a sentinel on every landing of the stair, a whole troop in the main entrance-hall, and yet <sup>5</sup> another about the bonfire in the shed. Sir Daniel's followers were supplemented by Lord Shoreby's; there were thus no lack of men or weapons to make the house secure, or to entrap a lurking enemy, should one be there. 10

Meanwhile, the body of the spy was carried out through the falling snow and deposited in the abbey church.

It was not until these dispositions had been taken, and all had returned to a decorous silence, <sup>15</sup> that the two girls drew Richard Shelton from his place of concealment, and made a full report to him of what had passed. He, upon his side, recounted the visit of the spy, his dangerous discovery and speedy end. 20

Joanna leaned back very faint against the curtained wall.

"It will avail but little," she said. "I shall be wed to-morrow, in the morning, after all!"

"What!" cried her friend. "And here is our <sup>25</sup> paladin that driveth lions like mice! Ye have little faith, of a surety. But come, friend lion-driver, give us some comfort; speak and let us hear bold counsels."

## The Black Arrow

Dick was confounded to be thus outfaced with his own exaggerated words; but though he colored, he still spoke stoutly.

“Truly,” said he, “we are in straits. Yet, could I but win out of this house for half an hour, I do honestly tell myself that all might still go well; and for the marriage, it should be prevented.”

“And for the lions,” mimicked the girl, “they shall be driven.”

10 “I crave your excuse,” said Dick. “I speak not now in any boasting humor, but rather as one inquiring after help or counsel; for if I get not forth of this house through these sentinels, I can do less than naught. Take me, I pray you, rightly.”

15 “Why said ye he was rustic, Joan?” the girl inquired. “I warrant he hath a tongue in his head; ready, soft, and bold is his speech at pleasure. What would ye more?”

20 “Nay,” sighed Joanna, with a smile, “they have changed me my friend Dick, ’tis sure enough. When I beheld him, he was rough indeed. But it matters little; there is no help for my hard case, and I must still be Lady Shoreby!”

25 “Nay, then,” said Dick, “I will even make the adventure. A friar is not much regarded; and if I found a good fairy to lead me up, I may find another belike to carry me down. How call they the name of the spy?”

“Rutter,” said the young lady, “and an excel-

## The Dead Spy

lent good name to call him by. But how mean ye, lion-driver? What is in your mind to do?"

"To offer boldly to go forth," returned Dick; "and, if any stop me, to keep an unchanged countenance, and say I go to pray for Rutter. They 5 will be praying over his poor clay even now."

"The device is somewhat simple," replied the girl, "yet it may hold."

"Nay," said young Shelton, "it is no device, but mere boldness, which serveth often better in great 10 straits."

"Ye say true," she said. "Well, go, a-Mary's name. And may Heaven speed you! Ye leave here a poor maid that loves you entirely, and another that is most heartily your friend. Be wary, 15 for their sakes, and make not shipwreck of your safety."

"Ay," added Joanna, "go, Dick. Ye run no more peril, whether ye go or stay. Go; ye take my heart with you; the saints defend you!" 20

Dick passed the first sentry with so assured a countenance that the fellow merely fidgeted and stared; but at the second landing the man carried his spear across and bade him name his business.

"*Pax vobiscum*," answered Dick. "I go to pray 25 over the body of this poor Rutter."

"Like enough," returned the sentry, "but to go alone is not permitted you." He leaned over the oaken balusters and whistled shrill. "One



## The Black Arrow

cometh," he cried; and then motioned Dick to pass.

At the foot of the stair he found the guard afoot and awaiting his arrival; and when he had once more repeated his story, the commander of the post ordered four men out to accompany him to the church.

"Let him not slip, my lads," he said. "Bring him to Sir Oliver, on your lives!"

10 The door was then opened; one of the men took Dick by either arm, another marched ahead with a link, and the fourth, with bent bow and the arrow on the string, brought up the rear. In this order they proceeded through the garden, under the thick  
15 darkness of the night and the scattering snow, and drew near to the dimly-illuminated windows of the abbey church.

At the western portal a picket of archers stood, taking what shelter they could find in the hollow of  
20 the arched doorways, and all powdered with the snow; and it was not until Dick's conductors had exchanged a word with these, that they were suffered to pass forth and enter the nave of the sacred edifice.

25 The church was doubtfully lighted by the tapers upon the great altar, and by a lamp or two that swung from the arched roof before the private

---

LINE 18. picket: guard. 23. nave: main body of a church.

## The Dead Spy

chapels of illustrious families. In the midst of the choir the dead spy lay, his limbs piously composed, upon a bier.

A hurried mutter of prayer sounded along the arches; cowed figures knelt in the stalls of the 5 choir, and on the steps of the high altar a priest in pontifical vestments celebrated mass.

Upon this fresh entrance, one of the cowed figures arose, and, coming down the steps which elevated the level of the choir above that of the 10 nave, demanded from the leader of the four men what business brought him to the church. Out of respect for the service and the dead, they spoke in guarded tones; but the echoes of that huge, empty building caught up their words, and hollowly 15 repeated and repeated them along the aisles.

“A monk!” returned Sir Oliver (for he it was), when he had heard the report of the archer. “My brother, I looked not for your coming,” he added, turning to young Shelton. “In all civility, who 20 are ye? And at whose instance do ye join your supplications to ours?”

Dick, keeping his cowl about his face, signed to Sir Oliver to move a pace or two aside from the archers; and, so soon as the priest had done so, 25 “I cannot hope to deceive you, sir,” he said. “My life is in your hands.”

---

LINE 5. **cowed**: wearing monks' hoods.

## The Black Arrow

Sir Oliver violently started; his stout cheeks grew pale, and for a space he was silent.

“Richard,” he said, “what brings you here, I know not; but I much misdoubt it to be evil. Nevertheless, for the kindness that was, I would not willingly deliver you to harm. Ye shall sit all night beside me in the stalls: ye shall sit there till my Lord of Shoreby be married, and the party gone safe home; and if all goeth well, and ye have planned no evil, in the end ye shall go whither ye will. But if your purpose be bloody, it shall return upon your head. Amen!”

And the priest devoutly crossed himself, and turned and louted to the altar.

With that, he spoke a few words more to the soldiers, and taking Dick by the hand, led him up to the choir, and placed him in the stall beside his own, where, for mere decency, the lad had instantly to kneel and appear to be busy with his devotions.

His mind and his eyes, however, were continually wandering. Three of the soldiers, he observed, instead of returning to the house, had got them quietly into a point of vantage in the aisle; and he could not doubt that they had done so by Sir Oliver’s command. Here, then, he was trapped. Here he must spend the night in the ghostly glimmer and shadow of the church, and looking on the pale face of him he slew; and here, in the morning, he

## The Dead Spy

must see his sweetheart married to another man before his eyes.

But, for all that, he obtained a command upon his mind, and built himself up in patience to await the issue.

5



## CHAPTER IV

### In the Abbey Church

IN Shoreby Abbey Church the prayers were kept up all night without cessation, now with the singing of psalms, now with a note or two upon the bell.

Rutter, the spy, was nobly waked. There he  
5 lay, meanwhile, as they had arranged him, his dead hands crossed upon his bosom, his dead eyes staring on the roof; and hard by, in the stall, the lad who had slain him waited, in sore disquietude, the coming of the morning.

10 Once only, in the course of the hours, Sir Oliver leaned across to his captive.

“Richard,” he whispered, “my son, if ye mean me evil, I will certify, on my soul’s welfare, ye design upon an innocent man. Sinful in the eye of Heaven  
15 I do declare myself, but sinful as against you I am not, neither have been ever.”

“My father,” returned Dick, in the same tone of voice, “trust me, I design nothing; but as for your innocence, I may not forget that ye cleared  
20 yourself but lamely.”

“A man may be innocently guilty,” replied the

---

LINE 4. **waked** : watched at night, as a dead body.

## In the Abbey Church

priest. "He may be set blindfolded upon a mission, ignorant of its true scope. So it was with me. I did decoy your father to his death; but as Heaven sees us in this sacred place, I knew not what I did."

"It may be," returned Dick, "but see what a strange web ye have woven, that I should be, at this hour, at once your prisoner and your judge; that ye should both threaten my days and deprecate my anger. Methinks, if ye had been all your life a true man and good priest, ye would neither thus fear nor thus detest me. And now to your prayers. I do obey you, since needs must; but I will not be burdened with your company."

The priest uttered a sigh so heavy that it had almost touched the lad into some sentiment of pity, and he bowed his head upon his hands like a man borne down below a weight of care. He joined no longer in the psalms; but Dick could hear the beads rattle through his fingers and the prayers a-pattering between his teeth.

Yet a little, and the grey of the morning began to struggle through the painted casements of the church, and to put to shame the glimmer of the tapers. The light slowly broadened and brightened, and presently through the southeastern clerestories a flush of rosy sunlight flickered on the

---

LINE 2. **scope**: purpose. 8. **deprecate**: protest against. 26. **clerestories**: the highest stories of the nave and choir of a church.

## The Black Arrow

walls. The storm was over ; the great clouds had disburdened their snow and fled farther on, and the new day was breaking on a merry winter landscape sheathed in white.

5 A bustle of church officers followed ; the bier was carried forth to the dead-house, and the stains of blood were cleansed from off the tiles, that no such ill-omened spectacle should disgrace the marriage of Lord Shoreby. At the same time, the very  
10 ecclesiastics who had been so dismally engaged all night began to put on morning faces, to do honor to the merrier ceremony which was about to follow. And further to announce the coming of the day, the pious of the town began to assemble and fall to  
15 prayer before their favorite shrines, or wait their turn at the confessionals.

Favored by this stir, it was of course easily possible for any man to avoid the vigilance of Sir Daniel's sentries at the door ; and presently Dick, looking  
20 about him warily, caught the eye of no less a person than Will Lawless, still in his monk's habit.

The outlaw, at the same moment, recognized his leader, and privily signed to him with hand and eye.

25 Now, Dick was far from having forgiven the old rogue his most untimely drunkenness, but he had no desire to involve him in his own predicament ;

---

LINE 23. *privily*: secretly.

## In the Abbey Church

and he signaled back to him, as plain as he was able, to begone.

Lawless, as though he had understood, disappeared at once behind a pillar, and Dick breathed again. 5

What, then, was his dismay to feel himself plucked by the sleeve and to find the old robber installed beside him, upon the next seat, and, to all appearance, plunged in his devotions!

Instantly Sir Oliver arose from his place, and, 10 gliding behind the stalls, made for the soldiers in the aisle. If the priest's suspicions had been so lightly wakened, the harm was already done, and Lawless a prisoner in the church.

"Move not," whispered Dick. "We are in the 15 plaguiest pass, thanks, before all things, to thy swinishness of yestereven. When ye saw me here, so strangely seated, where I have neither right nor interest, what a murrain! could ye not smell harm and get ye gone from evil?" 20

"Nay," returned Lawless, "I thought ye had heard from Ellis, and were here on duty."

"Ellis!" echoed Dick. "Is Ellis then returned?"

"For sure," replied the outlaw. "He came last 25 night, and belted me sore for being in wine — so there ye are avenged, my master. A furious man is Ellis Duckworth! He hath ridden me hotspur from Craven to prevent this marriage; and,



## The Black Arrow

Master Dick, ye know the way of him — do so he will !”

“Nay, then,” returned Dick, with composure, “you and I, my poor brother, are dead men; for  
5 I sit here a prisoner upon suspicion, and my neck was to answer for this very marriage that he purposeth to mar. I had a fair choice, by the rood! to lose my sweetheart or else lose my life! Well, the cast is thrown — it is to be my life.”

10 “By the mass,” cried Lawless, half arising, “I am gone !”

But Dick had his hand at once upon his shoulder.

“Friend Lawless, sit ye still,” he said. “An ye have eyes, look yonder at the corner by the chancel  
15 arch; see ye not that, even upon the motion of your rising, yon armed men are up and ready to intercept you? Yield ye, friend. Ye were bold aboard ship, when ye thought to die a sea-death; be bold again, now that y’ are to die presently upon  
20 the gallows.”

“Master Dick,” gasped Lawless, “the thing hath come upon me somewhat of the suddenest. But give me a moment till I fetch my breath again; and, by the mass, I will be as stouthearted as  
25 yourself.”

“Here is my bold fellow !” returned Dick. “And yet, Lawless, it goes hard against the grain with me to die; but where whining mendeth nothing, wherefore whine?”

## In the Abbey Church

“Nay, that indeed!” chimed Lawless. “And a fig for death at worst! It has to be done, my master, soon or late. And hanging in a good quarrel is an easy death, they say, though I could never hear of any that came back to say so.” 5

And so saying the stout old rascal leaned back in his stall, folded his arms, and began to look about him with the greatest air of insolence and unconcern.

“And for the matter of that,” Dick added, “it 10 is yet our best chance to keep quiet. We wot not yet what Duckworth purposes; and when all is said, and if the worst befall, we may yet clear our feet of it.”

Now that they ceased talking, they were aware of 15 a very distant and thin strain of mirthful music which steadily drew nearer, louder, and merrier. The bells in the tower began to break forth into a doubling peal, and a greater and greater concourse of people to crowd into the church, shuffling the 20 snow from off their feet, and clapping and blowing in their hands. The western door was flung wide open, showing a glimpse of sunlit, snowy street, and admitting in a great gust the shrewd air of the morning; and in short, it became plain by 25 every sign that Lord Shoreby desired to be married very early in the day, and that the wedding-train was drawing near.

Some of Lord Shoreby’s men now cleared a

## The Black Arrow

passage down the middle aisle, forcing the people back with lance-stocks ; and just then, outside the portal, the secular musicians could be descried drawing near over the frozen snow, the fifers and  
5 trumpeters scarlet in the face with lusty blowing, the drummers and the cymbalists beating as for a wager.

These, as they drew near the door of the sacred building, filed off on either side, and marking time  
10 to their own vigorous music, stood stamping in the snow. As they thus opened their ranks, the leaders of this noble bridal train appeared behind and between them ; and such was the variety and gaiety of their attire, such the display of silks and  
15 velvet, fur and satin, embroidery and lace, that the procession showed forth upon the snow like a flower-bed in a path or a painted window in a wall.

First came the bride, a sorry sight, as pale as winter, clinging to Sir Daniel's arm, and attended,  
20 as bridesmaid, by the short young lady who had befriended Dick the night before. Close behind, in the most radiant toilet, followed the bridegroom, halting on a gouty foot, and as he passed the threshold of the sacred building, and doffed his  
25 hat, his bald head was seen to be rosy with emotion.

And now came the hour of Ellis Duckworth.

Dick, who sat stunned among contrary emotions, grasping the desk in front of him, beheld a movement in the crowd, people jostling backward, and

## In the Abbey Church

eyes and arms uplifted. Following these signs, he beheld three or four men with bent bows, leaning from the clerestory gallery. At the same instant they delivered their discharge, and before the clamor and cries of the astounded populace had 5 time to swell fully upon the ear, they had flitted from their perch and disappeared.

The nave was full of swaying heads and voices screaming; the ecclesiastics thronged in terror from their places; the music ceased, and though 10 the bells overhead continued for some seconds to clang upon the air, some wind of the disaster seemed to find its way at last even to the chamber where the ringers were leaping on their ropes, and they also desisted from their merry labors. 15

Right in the midst of the nave the bridegroom lay stone-dead, pierced by two black arrows. The bride had fainted. Sir Daniel stood, towering above the crowd in his surprise and anger, a cloth-yard shaft quivering in his left forearm, and his 20 face streaming blood from another which had grazed his brow.

Long before any search could be made for them, the authors of this tragic interruption had clattered down a turnpike stair and decamped by a postern 25 door.

But Dick and Lawless still remained in pawn;

---

LINE 25. **turnpike**: winding. **decamped**: left. **postern**: back.



## The Black Arrow

they had indeed arisen on the first alarm and pushed manfully to gain the door; but what with the narrowness of the stalls, and the crowding of terrified priests and choristers, the attempt had been in  
5 vain, and they had stoically resumed their places.

And now, pale with horror, Sir Oliver rose to his feet and called upon Sir Daniel, pointing with one hand at Dick.

“Here,” he cried, “is Richard Shelton — alas  
10 the hour! — blood guilty! Seize him! — bid him be seized! For all our lives’ sakes, take him and bind him surely! He hath sworn our fall.”

Sir Daniel was blinded by anger — blinded by the hot blood that still streamed across his face.

15 “Where?” he bellowed. “Hale him forth! By the cross of Holywood but he shall rue this hour.”

The crowd fell back, and a party of archers invaded the choir, laid rough hands on Dick,  
20 dragged him headforemost from the stall, and thrust him by the shoulders down the chancel steps. Lawless, on his part, sat as still as a mouse.

Sir Daniel, brushing the blood out of his eyes, stared blinkingly upon his captive.

25 “Ay,” he said, “treacherous and insolent, I have thee fast; and by all potent oaths, for every drop of blood that now trickles in mine eyes, I will wring a groan out of thy carcass. Away with him!” he added. “Here is no place. Off with

## In the Abbey Church

him to my house. I will number every joint of thy body with a torture."

But Dick, putting off his captors, uplifted his voice.

"Sanctuary!" he shouted. "Sanctuary! Ho, <sup>5</sup> there, my fathers! They would drag me from the church!"

"From the church thou hast defiled with murder, boy," added a tall man, magnificently dressed.

"On what probation?" cried Dick. "They do <sup>10</sup> accuse me, indeed, of some complicity, but have not proved one tittle. I was, in truth, a suitor for this damsel's hand; and she, I will be bold to say, repaid my suit with favor. But what then? To love a maid is no offence, I trow — nay, nor to <sup>15</sup> gain her love. In all else, I stand here free from guiltiness."

There was a murmur of approval among the by-standers, so boldly Dick declared his innocence; but at the same time a throng of accusers arose upon <sup>20</sup> the other side, crying how he had been found last night in Sir Daniel's house, how he wore a sacrilegious disguise; and in the midst of the babel, Sir Oliver indicated Lawless, both by voice and gesture, as accomplice to the fact. He, in his turn, was <sup>25</sup> dragged from his seat and set beside his leader. The feelings of the crowd rose high on either side,

---

LINE 10. **probation**: evidence.

## The Black Arrow

and while some dragged the prisoners to and fro to favor their escape, others cursed and struck them with their fists. Dick's ears rang and his brain swam dizzily, like a man struggling in the eddies of a furious river.

But the tall man who had already answered Dick, by a prodigious exercise of voice restored silence and order in the mob.

"Search them," he said, "for arms. We may so judge of their intentions."

Upon Dick they found no weapon but his poniard, and this told in his favor, until one man officiously drew it from its sheath, and found it still uncleansed of the blood of Rutter. At this there was a great shout among Sir Daniel's followers, which the tall man suppressed by a gesture and a imperious glance. But when it came to the turn of Lawless, there was found under his gown a sheaf of arrows identical with those that had been shot.

"How say ye now?" asked the tall man, frowningly, of Dick.

"Sir," replied Dick, "I am here in sanctuary, is it not so? Well, sir, I see by your bearing that ye are high in station, and I read in your countenance the marks of piety and justice. To you, then, I will yield me prisoner, and that blithely, foregoing the advantage of this holy place. But rather than to be yielded into the discretion of that man — whom I do here accuse with a loud voice to be the

## In the Abbey Church

murderer of my natural father and the unjust detainer of my lands and revenues — rather than that, I would beseech you, under favor, with your own gentle hand, to dispatch me on the spot. Your own ears have heard him, how before that I was proven guilty he did threaten me with torments. It standeth not with your own honor to deliver me to my sworn enemy and old oppressor, but to try me fairly by the way of law, and, if that I be guilty indeed, to slay me mercifully.” 10

“My lord,” cried Sir Daniel, “ye will not hearken to this wolf? His bloody dagger reeks him the lie into his face.”

“Nay, but suffer me, good knight,” returned the tall stranger; “your own vehemence doth somewhat tell against yourself.” 15

And here the bride, who had come to herself some minutes past and looked wildly on upon this scene, broke loose from those that held her, and fell upon her knees before the last speaker. 20

“My Lord of Risingham,” she cried, “hear me, in justice. I am here in this man’s custody by mere force, reft from mine own people. Since that day I had never pity, countenance, nor comfort from the face of man — but from him only — 25 Richard Shelton — whom they now accuse and labor to undo. My lord, if he was yesternight in

---

LINE 23. *reft*: carried off.



## The Black Arrow

Sir Daniel's mansion, it was I that brought him there; he came but at my prayer, and thought to do no hurt. While yet Sir Daniel was a good lord to him, he fought with them of the Black Arrow 5 loyally; but when his foul guardian sought his life by practises, and he fled by night, for his soul's sake, out of that bloody house, whither was he to turn — he, helpless and penniless? Or if he be fallen among ill company, whom should ye blame — 10 the lad that was unjustly handled, or the guardian that did abuse his trust?"

And then the short young lady fell on her knees by Joanna's side.

"And I, my good lord and natural uncle," she 15 added, "I can bear testimony, on my conscience and before the face of all, that what this maiden saith is true. It was I, unworthy, that did lead the young man in."

Earl Risingham had heard in silence, and when 20 the voices ceased, he still stood silent for a space. Then he gave Joanna his hand to arise, though it was to be observed that he did not offer the like courtesy to her who had called herself his niece.

"Sir Daniel," he said, "here is a right intricate 25 affair, the which, with your good leave, it shall be mine to examine and adjust. Content ye, then; your business is in careful hands; justice shall be done you; and in the meanwhile, get ye incontinently home, and have your hurts attended. The

## In the Abbey Church

air is shrewd, and I would not ye took cold upon these scratches.”

He made a sign with his hand; it was passed down the nave by obsequious servants, who waited there upon his smallest gesture. Instantly, with-<sup>5</sup> out the church, a tucket sounded shrill, and through the open portal archers and men-at-arms, uniformly arrayed in the colors and wearing the badge of Lord Risingham, began to file into the church, took Dick and Lawless from those who still detained <sup>10</sup> them, and, closing their files about the prisoners, marched forth again and disappeared.

As they were passing, Joanna held both her hands to Dick and cried him her farewell; and the bridesmaid, nothing downcast by her uncle's evident <sup>15</sup> displeasure, blew him a kiss, with a “Keep your heart up, lion-driver!” that for the first time since the accident called up a smile to the faces of the crowd.

---

LINE 4. *obsequious*: attentive.

## CHAPTER V

### Earl Risingham

EARL RISINGHAM, although by far the most important person then in Shoreby, was poorly lodged in the house of a private gentleman upon the extreme outskirts of the town. Nothing but the armed  
5 men at the doors, and the mounted messengers that kept arriving and departing, announced the temporary residence of a great lord.

Thus it was that, from lack of space, Dick and Lawless were clapped into the same apartment.

10 “Well spoken, Master Richard,” said the outlaw; “it was excellently well spoken, and, for my part, I thank you cordially. Here we are in good hands; we shall be justly tried, and some time this evening decently hanged on the same tree.”

15 “Indeed, my poor friend, I do believe it,” answered Dick.

“Yet we have a string to our bow,” returned Lawless. “Ellis Duckworth is a man out of ten thousand; he holdeth you right near his heart, both  
20 for your own and for your father’s sake; and knowing you guiltless of this fact, he will stir earth and heaven to bear you clear.”

“It may not be,” said Dick. “What can he do?”

## Earl Risingham

He hath but a handful. Alack, if it were but to-morrow — could I but keep a certain tryst an hour before noon to-morrow — all were, I think, otherwise. But now there is no help.”

“Well,” concluded Lawless, “an ye will stand to 5 it for my innocence, I will stand to it for yours, and that stoutly. It shall naught avail us; but an I be to hang, it shall not be for lack of swearing.”

And then, while Dick gave himself over to his reflections, the old rogue curled himself down into 10 a corner, pulled his monkish hood about his face, and composed himself to sleep. Soon he was loudly snoring, so utterly had his long life of hardship and adventure blunted the sense of apprehension.

It was long after noon, and the day was already 15 failing, before the door was opened and Dick taken forth and led upstairs to where, in a warm cabinet, Earl Risingham sat musing over the fire.

On his captive's entrance he looked up.

“Sir,” he said, “I knew your father, who was a 20 man of honor, and this inclineth me to be the more lenient; but I may not hide from you that heavy charges lie against your character. Ye do consort with murderers and robbers; upon a clear probation ye have carried war against the king's peace; ye are 25 suspected to have piratically seized upon a ship; ye are found skulking with a counterfeit presentment

---

LINE 27. **presentment**: costume, masquerade.



## The Black Arrow

in your enemy's house; a man is slain that very evening ——”

“An it like you, my lord,” Dick interposed, “I will at once avow my guilt, such as it is. I slew  
5 this fellow Rutter; and to the proof” — searching in his bosom — “here is a letter from his wallet.”

Lord Risingham took the letter, and opened and read it twice.

“Ye have read this?” he inquired.

10 “I have read it,” answered Dick.

“Are ye for York or Lancaster?” the earl demanded.

“My lord, it was but a little while back that I was asked that question, and knew not how to  
15 answer it,” said Dick; “but having answered once, I will not vary. My lord, I am for York.”

The earl nodded approvingly.

“Honestly replied,” he said. “But wherefore, then, deliver me this letter?”

20 “Nay, but against traitors, my lord, are not all sides arrayed?” cried Dick.

“I would they were, young gentleman,” returned the earl; “and I do at least approve your saying. There is more youth than guile in you, I do perceive; and were not Sir Daniel a mighty man upon our  
25 side, I were half tempted to espouse your quarrel. For I have inquired, and it appears that you have

---

LINE 24. *guile*: craftiness.

## Earl Risingham

been hardly dealt with, and have much excuse. But look ye, sir, I am, before all else, a leader in the Queen's interest; and though by nature a just man, as I believe, and leaning even to the excess of mercy, yet must I order my goings for my party's interest, and, to keep Sir Daniel, I would go far about."

"My lord," returned Dick, "ye will think me very bold to counsel you; but do ye count upon Sir Daniel's faith? Methought he had changed sides intolerably often."

"Nay, it is the way of England. What would ye have?" the earl demanded. "But ye are unjust to the knight of Tunstall; and as faith goes, in this unfaithful generation, he hath of late been honorably true to us of Lancaster. Even in our last reverses he stood firm."

"An it please you, then," said Dick, "to cast your eye upon this letter, ye might somewhat change your thought of him," and he handed to the earl Sir Daniel's letter to Lord Wensleydale.

The effect upon the earl's countenance was instant; he lowered like an angry lion, and his hand, with a sudden movement, clutched at his dagger.

"Ye have read this also?" he asked.

"Even so," said Dick. "It is your lordship's own estate he offers to Lord Wensleydale."

## The Black Arrow

“It is my own estate, even as ye say!” returned the earl. “I am your bedesman for this letter. It hath shown me a fox’s hole. Command me, Master Shelton; I will not be backward in gratitude, 5 and to begin with, York or Lancaster, true man or thief, I do now set you at freedom. Go, a-Mary’s name! But judge it right that I retain and hang your fellow Lawless. The crime hath been most open, and it were fitting that some open punish- 10 ment should follow.”

“My lord, I make it my first suit to you to spare him also,” pleaded Dick.

“It is an old condemned rogue, thief, and vagabond, Master Shelton,” said the earl. “He 15 hath been gallows-ripe this score of years. And, whether for one thing or another, whether to-morrow or the day after, where is the great choice?”

“Yet, my lord, it was through love to me that he 20 came hither,” answered Dick, “and I were churlish and thankless to desert him.”

“Master Shelton, ye are troublesome,” replied the earl, severely. “It is an evil way to prosper in this world. Howbeit, and to be quit of your 25 importunity, I will once more humor you. Go, then, together; but go warily, and get swiftly out of Shoreby town. For this Sir Daniel (whom may

---

LINE 2. I am your bedesman: I am greatly indebted to you. 25. importunity: insistent urging.

## Earl Risingham

the saints confound!) thirsteth most greedily to have your blood."

"My lord, I do now offer you in words my gratitude, trusting at some brief date to pay you some of it in service," replied Dick, as he turned from the apartment.



## CHAPTER VI

### Arblaster Again

WHEN Dick and Lawless were suffered to steal, by a back way, out of the house where Lord Risingham held his garrison, the evening had already come.

5 They paused in shelter of the garden wall to consult on their best course. The danger was extreme. If one of Sir Daniel's men caught sight of them and raised the view-hallo, they would be run down and butchered instantly. And not only was the  
10 town of Shoreby a mere net of peril for their lives, but to make for the open country was to run the risk of the patrols.

A little way off, upon some open ground, they spied a windmill standing; and hard by that, a  
15 very large granary with open doors.

"How if we lay there until the night fall?" Dick proposed.

And Lawless having no better suggestion to offer, they made a straight push for the granary at a run,  
20 and concealed themselves behind the door among some straw. The daylight rapidly departed; and presently the moon was silvering the frozen snow.

---

LINE 8. view-hallo: warning shout.

## Arblaster Again

Now or never was their opportunity to gain the Goat and Bagpipes unobserved and change their tell-tale garments. Yet even then it was advisable to go round by the outskirts, and not run the gauntlet of the market-place, where, in the concourse of 5 people, they stood the more imminent peril to be recognized and slain.

This course was a long one. It took them not far from the house by the beach, now lying dark and silent, and brought them forth at last by the 10 margin of the harbor. Many of the ships, as they could see by the clear moonshine, had weighed anchor, and, profiting by the calm sky, proceeded for more distant parts; answerable to this, the rude alehouses along the beach (although, in defiance of 15 the curfew law, they still shone with fire and candle) were no longer thronged with customers, and no longer echoed to the chorus of sea songs.

Hastily, half running, with their monkish raiment kilted to the knee, they plunged through the deep 20 snow, and threaded the labyrinth of marine lumber; and they were already more than half-way round the harbor when, as they were passing close before an alehouse, the door suddenly opened and let out a gush of light upon their fleeting figures. 25

Instantly they stopped, and made believe to be engaged in earnest conversation.

---

LINE 5. *concourse*: throng.

## The Black Arrow

Three men, one after another, came out of the alehouse, and the last closed the door behind him. All three were unsteady upon their feet, as if they had passed the day in deep potations, and they  
5 now stood wavering in the moonlight, like men who knew not what they would be after. The tallest of the three was talking in a loud, lamentable voice.

“Seven pieces of as good Gascony as ever a tapster broached,” he was saying, “the best ship out  
10 o’ the port o’ Dartmouth, a Virgin Mary parcel-gilt, thirteen pounds of good gold money — ”

“I have bad losses, too,” interrupted one of the others. “I have had losses of mine own, gossip Arblaster. I was robbed at Martinmas of five  
15 shillings and a leather wallet well worth ninepence farthing.”

Dick’s heart smote him at what he heard. Until that moment he had not perhaps thought twice of the poor skipper who had been ruined by the loss  
20 of the *Good Hope*; so careless in those days, were men who wore arms of the goods and interests of their inferiors. But this sudden encounter reminded him sharply of the high-handed manner and ill ending of his enterprise; and both he and

---

LINE 8. **tapster**: a man who serves liquor in an alehouse. 9. **broached**: opened. 10. **parcel-gilt**: partly gilt. 14. **Martinmas**: a festival in honor of St. Martin, November 11. 15. **ninepence**: nine pennies. 16. **farthing**: one-fourth of a penny.

## Arblaster Again

Lawless turned their heads the other way, to avoid the chance of recognition.

The ship's dog had, however, made his escape from the wreck and found his way back again to Shoreby. He was now at Arblaster's heels, and suddenly sniffing and pricking his ears, he darted forward and began to bark furiously at the two sham friars.

His master unsteadily followed him.

"Hey, shipmates!" he cried. "Have ye ever a penny piece for a poor old shipman, clean destroyed by pirates? I am a man that would have paid for you both o' Thursday morning; and now here I be o' Saturday night, begging for a flagon of ale! Ask my man Tom, if ye misdoubt me. Seven pieces of good Gascon wine, a ship that was mine own, and was my father's before me, a Blessed Mary of plane-tree wood and parcel-gilt, and thirteen pounds in gold and silver. Hey; what say ye? A man that fought the French, too; for I have fought the French; I have cut more French throats upon the high seas than ever a man that sails out of Dartmouth. Come, a penny piece."

Neither Dick nor Lawless durst answer him a word, lest he should recognize their voices; and they stood there as helpless as a ship ashore, not knowing where to turn nor what to hope.

---

LINE 14. **flagon**: pot.



## The Black Arrow

“Are ye dumb, boy?” inquired the skipper. “Mates,” he added, with a hiccup, “they be dumb. I like not this manner of discourtesy; for an a man be dumb, so be as he’s courteous, he will still speak  
5 when he was spoken to, methinks.”

By this time the sailor, Tom, who was a man of great personal strength, seemed to have conceived some suspicion of these two speechless figures; and being soberer than his captain, stepped suddenly  
10 before him, took Lawless roughly by the shoulder, and asked him, with an oath, what ailed him that he held his tongue. To this the outlaw, thinking all was over, made answer by a wrestling feint that stretched the sailor on the sand, and, calling upon  
15 Dick to follow him, took to his heels among the lumber.

The affair passed in a second. Before Dick could run at all, Arblaster had him in his arms; Tom, crawling on his face, had caught him by one  
20 foot, and the third man had a drawn cutlass brandishing above his head.

It was not so much the danger, it was not so much the annoyance, that now bowed down the spirits of young Shelton; it was the profound humiliation  
25 to have escaped Sir Daniel, convinced Lord Risingham, and now fall helpless in the hands of this old drunken sailor; and not merely helpless, but, as

---

LINE 20. *cutlass*: a short, heavy sword.

## Arblaster Again

his conscience loudly told him when it was too late, actually guilty — actually the bankrupt debtor of the man whose ship he had stolen and lost.

“Bring me him back into the alehouse, till I see his face,” said Arblaster. 5

“Nay, nay,” returned Tom; “but let us first unload his wallet, lest the other lads cry share.”

But though he was searched from head to foot, not a penny was found upon him; nothing but Lord Foxham’s signet, which they plucked savagely 10 from his finger.

“Turn me him to the moon,” said the skipper; and taking Dick by the chin, he cruelly jerked his head into the air. “Blessed Virgin!” he cried, “it is the pirate.” 15

“Hey!” cried Tom.

“By the Virgin of Bordeaux, it is the man himself!” repeated Arblaster. “What, sea-thief, do I hold you?” he cried. “Where is my ship? Where is my wine? Hey! have I you in my hands? 20 Tom, give me one end of a cord here; I will so truss me this sea-thief, hand and foot together, like a basting turkey — marry, I will so bind him up — and thereafter I will so beat — so beat him!”

And so he ran on, winding the cord meanwhile 25 about Dick’s limbs with the dexterity peculiar to seamen, and at every turn and cross securing it with a knot, and tightening the whole fabric with a savage pull.

## The Black Arrow

When he had done, the lad was a mere package in his hands — as helpless as the dead. The skipper held him at arm's length, and laughed aloud. Then he fetched him a stunning buffet on the ear ;  
5 and then turned him about, and furiously kicked and kicked him. Anger rose up in Dick's bosom like a storm ; anger strangled him, and he thought to have died ; but when the sailor, tired of this cruel play, dropped him all his length upon the  
10 sand and turned to consult with his companions, he instantly regained command of his temper. Here was a momentary respite ; ere they began again to torture him, he might have found some method of escape from this degrading and fatal  
15 misadventure.

Presently, sure enough, and while his captors were still discussing what to do with him, he took heart of grace, and, with a pretty steady voice, addressed them.

20 "My masters," he began, "are ye gone clean foolish? Here hath Heaven put into your hands as pretty an occasion to grow rich as ever shipman had — such as ye might make thirty over sea adventures and not find again — and, by  
25 the mass! what do ye? Beat me? — nay ; so would an angry child. But for long-headed tarry-Johns, that fear not fire nor water, and that love gold as they love beef, methinks ye are not wise."

## Arblaster Again

“Ay,” said Tom, “now y’ are trussed ye would cozen us.”

“Cozen you!” repeated Dick. “Nay, if ye be fools, it would be easy. But if ye be shrewd fellows, as I trow ye are, ye can see plainly where your interest lies. When I took your ship from you, we were many, we were well clad and armed; but now, bethink you a little, who mustered that array? One incontestably that hath made much gold. And if he, being already rich, continueth to hunt <sup>10</sup> after more even in the face of storms — bethink you once more — shall there not be a treasure somewhere hidden?”

“What meaneth he?” asked one of the men.

“Why, if ye have lost an old skiff and a few jugs <sup>15</sup> of vinegary wine,” continued Dick, “forget them, for the trash they are; and do ye rather buckle to an adventure worth the name, that shall, in twelve hours, make or mar you forever. But take me up from where I lie, and let us go somewhere near <sup>20</sup> at hand and talk across a flagon, for I am sore and frozen, and my mouth is half among the snow.”

“He seeks but to cozen us,” said Tom, contemptuously. <sup>25</sup>

“Cozen! Cozen!” cried the third man. “I would I could see the man that could cozen me!

---

LINE 2. **cozen**: cheat. 9. **incontestably**: without doubt.



## The Black Arrow

He were a cozener indeed! Nay, I was not born yesterday. I can see a church when it hath a steeple on it; and for my part, gossip Arblaster, methinks there is some sense in this young man.  
5 Shall we go hear him, indeed? Say, shall we go hear him?"

"I would look gladly on a pottle of strong ale, good Master Pirret," returned Arblaster. "How say ye, Tom? But then the wallet is empty."

10 "I will pay," said the other, "I will pay. I would fain see this matter out; I do believe, upon my conscience, there is gold in it."

"Nay, if ye get again to drinking, all is lost!" cried Tom.

15 "Gossip Arblaster, ye suffer your fellow to have too much liberty," returned Master Pirret. "Would ye be led by a hired man? Fy, fy!"

"Peace, fellow!" said Arblaster, addressing Tom.

"Will ye put your oar in! Truly a fine pass, when  
20 the crew is to correct the skipper!"

"Well, then, go your way," said Tom; "I wash my hands of you."

"Set him, then, upon his feet," said Master Pirret. "I know a privy place where we may  
25 drink and discourse."

"If I'm to walk, my friends, ye must set my feet at liberty," said Dick, when he had been once more planted upright like a post.

"He saith true," laughed Pirret. "Truly, he

## Arblaster Again

could not walk accoutered as he is. Give it a slit — out with your knife and slit it, gossip.”

Even Arblaster paused at this proposal; but as his companion continued to insist, and Dick had the sense to keep the merest wooden indifference of expression, and only shrugged his shoulders over the delay, the skipper consented at last, and cut the cords which tied his prisoner's feet and legs. Not only did this enable Dick to walk, but the whole network of his bonds being proportionately loosened, he felt the arm behind his back begin to move more freely, and could hope, with time and trouble, to disengage it entirely. So much he owed already to the owlish silliness and greed of Master Pirret.

That worthy now assumed the lead, and conducted them to the very same rude alehouse where Lawless had taken Arblaster on the day of the gale. It was now quite deserted; the fire was a pile of red embers, radiating the most ardent heat; and when they had chosen their places, and the landlord had set before them a measure of mulled ale, both Pirret and Arblaster stretched forth their legs and squared their elbows like men bent upon a pleasant hour.

The table at which they sat, like all the others in the alehouse, consisted of a heavy, square board,

---

LINE 1. **accoutered**: harnessed.

## The Black Arrow

set on a pair of barrels; and each of the four curiously assorted cronies sat at one side of the square, Pirret facing Arblaster, and Dick opposite to the common sailor.

5 “And now, young man,” said Pirret, “to your tale. It doth appear, indeed, that ye have somewhat abused our gossip Arblaster; but what then? Make it up to him — show him but this chance to become wealthy — and I will go pledge he will for-  
10 give you.”

So far Dick had spoken pretty much at random; but it was now necessary, under the supervision of six eyes, to invent and tell some marvellous story, and, if it were possible, get back into his hands the  
15 all-important signet. To squander time was the first necessity. The longer his stay lasted, the more would his captors drink, and the surer should he be when he attempted his escape.

Well, Dick was not much of an inventor, and  
20 what he told was pretty much the tale of Ali Baba, with Shoreby and Tunstall Forest substituted for the East, and the treasures of the cavern rather exaggerated than diminished. As the reader is aware, it is an excellent story, and has but one  
25 drawback — that it is not true; and so as these three simple shipmen now heard it for the first time, their eyes stood out of their faces, and their mouths gaped like codfish at a fishmonger’s.

Pretty soon a second measure of mulled ale was

## Arblaster Again

called for ; and while Dick was still artfully spinning out the incidents a third followed the second.

Here was the position of the parties towards the end :

Arblaster, three-parts drunk and one-half asleep, 5 hung helpless on his stool. Even Tom had been much delighted with the tale, and his vigilance had abated in proportion. Meanwhile, Dick had gradually wormed his right arm clear of its bonds, and was ready to risk all. 10

“And so,” said Pirret, “y’ are one of these?”

“I was made so,” replied Dick, “against my will ; but an I could get a sack or two of gold coin to my share, I should be a fool indeed to continue dwelling in a filthy cave, and standing shot and buffet like a 15 soldier. Here be we four ; good ! Let us, then, go forth into the forest to-morrow ere the sun be up. Could we come honestly by a donkey, it were better ; but an we cannot, we have our four strong backs, and I warrant me we shall come home staggering.” 20

Pirret licked his lips.

“And this magic,” he said — “this password, whereby the cave is opened — how call ye it, friend?”

“Nay, none know the word but the three chiefs,” 25 returned Dick ; “but here is your great good fortune, that, on this very evening, I should be the bearer of a spell to open it. It is a thing not trusted twice a year beyond the captain’s wallet.”



## The Black Arrow

“A spell!” said Arblaster, half awakening, and squinting upon Dick with one eye. “Aroint thee! no spells! I be a good Christian. Ask my man, Tom, else.”

5 “Nay, but this is white magic,” said Dick. “It doth naught with the devil; only the powers of numbers, herbs, and planets.”

“Ay, ay,” said Pirret; “’tis but white magic, gossip. There is no sin therein, I do assure you.  
10 But proceed, good youth. This spell — in what should it consist?”

“Nay, that I will incontinently show you,” answered Dick. “Have ye there the ring ye took from my finger? Good! Now hold it forth before  
15 you by the extreme finger-ends, at the arm’s length, and over against the shining of these embers. ’Tis so exactly. Thus, then, is the spell.”

With a haggard glance, Dick saw the coast was clear between him and the door. He put up an  
20 internal prayer. Then whipping forth his arm, he made but one snatch of the ring, and at the same instant levering up the table, he sent it bodily over upon the seaman Tom. He, poor soul, went down bawling under the ruins; and before Arblaster un-  
25 derstood that anything was wrong, or Pirret could collect his dazzled wits, Dick had run to the door and escaped into the moonlit night.

---

LINE 2. **Aroint thee**: be gone.

## Arblaster Again

The moon, which now rode in the mid-heavens, and the extreme whiteness of the snow, made the open ground about the harbor bright as day; and young Shelton leaping, with kilted robe, among the lumber was a conspicuous figure from afar. 5

Tom and Pirret followed him with shouts; from every drinking-shop they were joined by others whom their cries aroused; and presently a whole fleet of sailors was in full pursuit. But Jack ashore was a bad runner, even in the fifteenth century, 10 and Dick, besides, had a start, which he rapidly improved, until, as he drew near the entrance of a narrow lane, he even paused and looked laughingly behind him.

Upon the white floor of snow, all the shipmen of 15 Shoreby came clustering in an inky mass, and tailing out rearward in isolated clumps. Every man was shouting or screaming; every man was gesticulating with both arms in the air; someone was continually falling; and to complete the picture, when one fell, 20 a dozen would fall upon the top of him.

The confused mass of sound which they rolled up as high as the moon was partly comical and partly terrifying to the fugitive whom they were hunting. In itself, it was impotent, for he made 25 sure no seaman in the port could run him down. But the mere volume of noise, in so far as it must awake all the sleepers in Shoreby, and bring all the skulking sentries to the street, did really threaten

## The Black Arrow

him with danger in the front. So, spying a dark doorway at a corner, he whipped briskly into it, and let the uncouth hunt go by him, still shouting and gesticulating, and all red with hurry, and white  
5 with tumbles in the snow.

It was a long while, indeed, before this great invasion of the town by the harbor came to an end, and it was long before silence was restored. For long, lost sailors were still to be heard pounding and  
10 shouting through the streets in all directions and in every quarter of the town. Quarrels followed, sometimes among themselves, sometimes with men of the patrols; knives were drawn, blows given and received, and more than one dead body remained  
15 behind upon the snow.

When, a full hour later, the last seaman returned grumblingly to the harbor side and his particular tavern, it may fairly be questioned if he had ever known what manner of man he was pursuing, but  
20 it was absolutely sure that he had now forgotten. By next morning there were many strange stories flying; and a little while after, the legend of the devil's nocturnal visit was an article of faith with all the lads of Shoreby.

25 But the return of the last seaman did not, even yet, set free young Shelton from his cold imprisonment in the doorway.

---

LINE 23. article: matter.

## Arblaster Again

For some time after there was a great activity of patrols; and special parties came forth to make the round of the place and report to one or other of the great lords, whose slumbers had been thus unusually broken. 5

The night was already well spent before Dick ventured from his hiding-place and came, safe and sound, but aching with cold and bruises, to the door of the Goat and Bagpipes. As the law required, there was neither fire nor candle in the 10 house; but he groped his way into a corner of the icy guest-room, found an end of the blanket, which he hitched around his shoulders, and creeping close to the nearest sleeper, was soon lost in slumber.



## BOOK V: CROOKBACK

### CHAPTER I

#### The Shrill Trumpet

VERY early the next morning, before the first peep of the day, Dick arose, changed his garments, armed himself once more like a gentleman, and set forth for Lawless's den in the forest. There, it will  
5 be remembered, he had left Lord Foxham's papers; and to get these and be back in time for the tryst with the young Duke of Gloucester could be managed only by an early start, and the most vigorous walking.

10 The frost was more rigorous than ever; the air windless and dry, and stinging to the nostril. The moon had gone down, but the stars were still bright and numerous, and the reflection from the snow was clear and cheerful. There was no need for a  
15 lamp to walk by; nor, in that still but ringing air, the least temptation to delay.

Dick had crossed the greater part of the open ground between Shoreby and the forest, and had reached the bottom of the little hill, some hundred  
20 yards below the Cross of St. Bride, when, through

## The Shrill Trumpet

the stillness of the black morn, there rang forth the note of a trumpet, so shrill, clear and piercing, that he thought he had never heard the match of it for audibility. It was blown once, and then hurriedly a second time ; and then the clash of steel succeeded. 5

At this young Shelton pricked his ears, and drawing his sword, ran forward up the hill.

Presently he came in sight of the cross, and was aware of a most fierce encounter raging on the road before it. There were seven or eight assailants, 10 and but one to keep head against them ; but so active and dexterous was this one, so desperately did he charge and scatter his opponents, so deftly keep his footing on the ice, that already, before Dick could intervene, he had slain one, wounded 15 another, and kept the whole in check.

Still, it was by a miracle that he continued his defense, and at any moment, any accident, the least slip of foot or error of hand, his life would be a forfeit. 20

“Hold ye well, sir ! Here is help !” cried Richard ; and forgetting that he was alone, and that the cry was somewhat irregular, “To the Arrow ! To the Arrow !” he shouted, as he fell upon the rear of the assailants. 25

These were stout fellows also, for they gave not an inch at this surprise, but faced about, and fell

---

LINE 12. *dexterous*: skillful.

## The Black Arrow

with astonishing fury upon Dick. Four against one, the steel flashed about him in the starlight: the sparks flew fiercely; one of the men opposed to him fell — in the stir of the fight he hardly knew  
5 why; then he himself was struck across the head, and though the steel cap below his hood protected him, the blow beat him down upon one knee, with a brain whirling like a windmill sail.

Meanwhile the man whom he had come to rescue,  
10 instead of joining in the conflict, had, on the first sign of intervention, leaped aback and blown again, and yet more urgently and loudly, on that same shrill-voiced trumpet that began the alarm. Next moment, indeed, his foes were on him, and he was  
15 once more charging and fleeing, leaping, stabbing, dropping to his knee, and using indifferently sword and dagger, foot and hand, with the same unshaken courage and feverish energy and speed.

But that ear-piercing summons had been heard  
20 at last. There was a muffled rushing in the snow; and, in a good hour for Dick, who saw the sword-points glitter already at his throat, there poured forth out of the wood upon both sides a disorderly torrent of mounted men-at-arms, each cased in  
25 iron, and with visor lowered, each bearing his lance in rest, or his sword bared and raised, and each carrying, so to speak, a passenger, in the shape of an archer or page, who leaped one after another from their perches, and had presently doubled the array.

## The Shrill Trumpet

The original assailants, seeing themselves outnumbered and surrounded, threw down their arms without a word.

“Seize me these fellows!” said the hero of the trumpet; and when his order had been obeyed, he drew near to Dick and looked him in the face.

Dick, returning his scrutiny, was surprised to find in one who had displayed such strength, skill, and energy, a lad no older than himself — slightly deformed, with one shoulder higher than the other, and of a pale, painful, and distorted countenance. The eyes, however, were very clear and bold.

“Sir,” said the lad, “ye came in good time for me, and none too early.”

“My lord,” returned Dick, with a faint sense that he was in the presence of a great personage, “ye are yourself so marvellous a good swordsman that I believe ye had managed them single-handed. Howbeit, it was certainly well for me that your men delayed no longer than they did.”

“How knew ye who I was?” demanded the stranger.

“Even now, my lord,” Dick answered, “I am ignorant of whom I speak with.”

“Is it so?” asked the other. “And yet ye threw yourself head first into this unequal battle.”

“I saw one man valiantly contending against

---

LINE 9. Richard Crookback would have been really far younger at this date.



## The Black Arrow

many," replied Dick, "and I had thought myself dishonored not to bear him aid."

A singular sneer played about the young nobleman's mouth as he made answer :

5 "These are very brave words. But to the more essential — are ye Lancaster or York?"

"My lord, I make no secret; I am clear for York," Dick answered.

"By the mass!" replied the other, "it is well for  
10 you."

And so saying, he turned towards one of his followers.

"Let me see," he continued, in the same sneering and cruel tones — "let me see a clean end of these  
15 brave gentlemen. Truss me them up."

There were but five survivors of the attacking party. Archers seized them by the arms; they were hurried to the borders of the wood, and each placed below a tree of suitable dimensions; the  
20 rope was adjusted; an archer carrying the end of it, hastily clambered overhead, and before a minute was over, and without a word passing upon either hand, the five men were swinging by the neck.

"And now," cried the deformed leader, "back to  
25 your posts, and when I summon you next, be readier to attend."

"My lord duke," said one man, "beseech you, tarry not here alone. Keep but a handful of lances at your hand."

## The Shrill Trumpet

“Fellow,” said the duke, “I have forborne to chide you for your slowness. Cross me not, therefore. I trust my hand and arm, for all that I be crooked. Ye were backward when the trumpet sounded: and ye are now too forward with your counsels. But it is ever so; last with the lance and first with tongue. Let it be reversed.”

And with a gesture that was not without a sort of dangerous nobility, he waved them off.

The footmen climbed again to their seats behind the men-at-arms, and the whole party moved slowly away and disappeared in twenty different directions, under the cover of the forest.

The day was by this time beginning to break, and the stars to fade. The first grey glimmer of dawn shone upon the countenances of the two young men, who now turned once more to face each other.

“Here,” said the duke, “ye have seen my vengeance, which is, like my blade, both sharp and ready. But I would not have you, for all Christendom, suppose me thankless. You that came to my aid with a good sword and a better courage — unless that ye recoil from my misshapeness — come to my heart.”

25

And so saying the young leader held out his arms for an embrace.

In the bottom of his heart Dick already entertained a great terror and some hatred for the man

## The Black Arrow

whom he had rescued ; but the invitation was so worded that it would not have been merely discourteous, but cruel, to refuse or hesitate, and he hastened to comply.

5 “And now, my lord duke,” he said, when he had regained his freedom, “do I suppose aright? Are ye my Lord Duke of Gloucester?”

“I am Richard of Gloucester,” returned the other. “And you — how call they you?”

10 Dick told him his name, and presented Lord Foxham’s signet, which the duke immediately recognized.

“Ye come too soon,” he said ; “but why should I complain? Ye are like me, that was here at  
15 watch two hours before the day. But this is the first sally of mine arms ; upon this adventure, Master Shelton, shall I make or mar the quality of my renown. There lie mine enemies, under two old, skilled captains, Risingham and Brackley, well  
20 posted for strength, I do believe, but yet upon two sides without retreat, enclosed betwixt the sea, the harbor, and the river. Methinks, Shelton, here were a great blow to be stricken, an we could strike it silently and suddenly.”

25 “I do think so, indeed,” cried Dick, warming.

“Have ye my Lord Foxham’s notes?” inquired the duke.

And then Dick, having explained how he was without them for the moment, made himself bold

## The Shrill Trumpet

to offer information every jot as good, of his own knowledge.

“And for mine own part, my lord duke,” he added, “an ye had men enough, I would fall on even at this present. For, look ye, at the peep of 5 day the watches of the night are over; but by day they keep neither watch nor ward — only scour the outskirts with horsemen. Now, then, when the night-watch is already unarmed, and the rest are at their morning cup — now were the 10 time to break them.”

“How many do ye count?” asked Gloucester.

“They number not two thousand,” Dick replied.

“I have seven hundred in the woods behind us,” said the duke; “seven hundred follow from **Kettley**, 15 and will be here anon; behind these, and farther, are four hundred more; and my Lord Foxham hath five hundred half a day from here, at Holywood. Shall we attend their coming, or fall on?”

“My lord,” said Dick, “when ye hanged these 20 five poor rogues ye did decide the question. Churls although they were, in these uneasy times they will be lacked and looked for, and the alarm be given. Therefore, my lord, if ye do count upon the advantage of a surprise, ye have not, in my 25 poor opinion, one whole hour in front of you.”

“I do think so, indeed,” returned Crookback.

---

LINE 6. **watches of the night:** guard periods of the night.



## The Black Arrow

“Well, before an hour, ye shall be in the thick on’t, winning spurs. A swift man to Holywood, carrying Lord Foxham’s signet; another along the road to speed my laggards! Nay, Shelton, by the rood,  
5 it may be done!”

Therewith he once more set his trumpet to his lips and blew.

This time he was not long kept waiting. In a moment the open space about the cross was filled  
10 with horse and foot. Richard of Gloucester took his place upon the steps, and dispatched messenger after messenger to hasten the concentration of the seven hundred men that lay hidden in the immediate neighborhood among the woods; and before a quar-  
15 ter of an hour had passed, all his dispositions being taken, he put himself at their head, and began to move down the hill towards Shoreby.

His plan was simple. He was to seize a quarter of the town of Shoreby lying on the right hand of  
20 the high-road, and make his position good there in the narrow lanes until his reinforcements followed.

If Lord Risingham chose to retreat, Richard would follow upon his rear, and take him between  
25 two fires; or, if he preferred to hold the town, he would be shut in a trap, there to be gradually overwhelmed by force of numbers.

---

LINE 15. dispositions: commands.

## The Shrill Trumpet

There was but one danger, but that was imminent and great — Gloucester's seven hundred might be rolled up and cut to pieces in the first encounter, and, to avoid this, it was needful to make the surprise of their arrival as complete as possible. 5

The footmen, therefore, were all once more taken up behind the riders, and Dick had the signal honor meted out to him of mounting behind Gloucester himself. For as far as there was any cover the troops moved slowly, and when they came near 10 the end of the trees that lined the highway, stopped to breathe and reconnoiter.

The sun was now well up, shining with a frosty brightness out of a yellow halo, and right over against the luminary, Shoreby, a field of snowy 15 roofs and ruddy gables, was rolling up its columns of morning smoke.

Gloucester turned round to Dick.

"In that poor place," he said, "where people are cooking breakfast, either you shall gain your 20 spurs and I begin a life of mighty honor and glory in the world's eye, or both of us, as I conceive it, shall fall dead and be unheard of. Two Richards are we. Well then, Richard Shelton, they shall be heard about, these two! Their swords shall not 25 ring more loudly on men's helmets than their names shall ring in people's ears."

---

LINE 12. **reconnoiter**: survey the situation.

## The Black Arrow

Dick was astonished at so great a hunger after fame, expressed with so great vehemence of voice and language; and he answered very sensibly and quietly that, for his part, he promised he would do  
5 his duty, and doubted not of victory if everyone did the like.

By this time the horses were well breathed, and the leader holding up his sword and giving rein, the whole troop of chargers broke into the gallop and  
10 thundered, with their double load of fighting men, down the remainder of the hill and across the snow-covered plain that still divided them from Shoreby.

## CHAPTER II

### The Battle of Shoreby

THE whole distance to be crossed was not above a quarter of a mile. But they had no sooner debouched beyond the cover of the trees than they were aware of people fleeing and screaming in the snowy meadows upon either hand. Almost at the same moment a great rumor began to arise, and spread and grow continually louder in the town; and they were not yet half-way to the nearest house before the bells began to ring backward from the steeple. 10

The young duke ground his teeth together. By these so early signals of alarm he feared to find his enemies prepared; and if he failed to gain a footing in the town, he knew that his small party would soon be broken and exterminated in the open. 15

In the town, however, the Lancastrians were far from being in so good a posture. It was as Dick had said. The night-guard had already doffed their harness; the rest were still hanging — unlatched, unbraced, all unprepared for battle — about their quarters; and in the whole of Shoreby there were not, perhaps, fifty men full armed, or fifty chargers ready to be mounted. 20



## The Black Arrow

The beating of the bells, the terrifying summons of men who ran about the streets crying and beating upon the doors, aroused in an incredibly short space at least two-score out of that half-hundred. These  
5 got speedily to horse, and, the alarm still flying wild and contrary, galloped in different directions.

Thus it befell that, when Richard of Gloucester reached the first house of Shoreby, he was met in the mouth of the street by a mere handful of lances,  
10 whom he swept before his onset as the storm chases the bark.

A hundred paces into the town, Dick Shelton touched the duke's arm; the duke, in answer, gathered his reins, put the shrill trumpet to his  
15 mouth, and blowing a concerted point, turned to the right hand out of the direct advance. Swerving like a single rider, his whole command turned after him, and, still at the full gallop of the chargers, swept up the narrow by-street. Only the last  
20 score of riders drew rein and faced about in the entrance; the footmen, whom they carried behind them, leapt at the same instant to the earth, and began, some to bend their bows, and others to break into and secure the houses upon either hand.  
25 Surprised at this sudden change of direction, and daunted by the firm front of the rear-guard, the few Lancastrians, after a momentary consultation, turned and rode farther into town to seek for reinforcements.

## The Battle of Shoreby

The quarter of the town upon which, by the advice of Dick, Richard of Gloucester had now seized, consisted of five small streets of poor and ill-inhabited houses, occupying a very gentle eminence, and lying open towards the back. 5

The five streets being each secured by a good guard, the reserve would thus occupy the center, out of shot, and yet ready to carry aid wherever it was needed.

Such was the poorness of the neighborhood that 10 none of the Lancastrian lords, and but few of their retainers, had been lodged therein; and the inhabitants, with one accord, deserted their houses and fled, squalling, along the streets or over garden walls.

In the center, where the five ways all met, a 15 somewhat ill-favored alehouse displayed the sign of the Chequers; and here the Duke of Gloucester chose his headquarters for the day.

To Dick he assigned the guard of one of the five streets. 20

“Go,” he said, “win your spurs. Win glory for me; one Richard for another. I tell you, if I rise, ye shall rise by the same ladder. Go,” he added, shaking him by the hand.

But, as soon as Dick was gone, he turned to a 25 little shabby archer at his elbow.

“Go, Dutton, and that right speedily,” he added. “Follow that lad. If ye find him faithful, ye answer for his safety, a head for a head. Woe unto

## The Black Arrow

you, if ye return without him ! But if he be faithless — or, for one instant, ye misdoubt him — stab him from behind.”

In the meanwhile Dick hastened to secure his 5 post. The street he had to guard was very narrow, and closely lined with houses, which projected and overhung the roadway ; but narrow and dark as it was, since it opened upon the market-place of the town, the main issue of the battle would probably 10 fall to be decided on that spot.

The market-place was full of townspeople fleeing in disorder ; but there was as yet no sign of any foeman ready to attack, and Dick judged he had some time before him to make ready his defense.

15 The two houses at the end stood deserted, with open doors, as the inhabitants had left them in their flight, and from these he had the furniture hastily tossed forth and piled into a barrier in the entry of the lane. A hundred men were placed at 20 his disposal, and of these he threw the more part into the houses, where they might lie in shelter and deliver their arrows from the windows. With the rest, under his own immediate eye, he lined the barricade.

25 Meanwhile the utmost uproar and confusion had continued to prevail throughout the town ; and what with the hurried clashing of bells, the sounding of trumpets, the swift movement of bodies of horse, the cries of the commanders, and the shrieks

## The Battle of Shoreby

of women, the noise was almost deafening to the ear. Presently, little by little, the tumult began to subside; and soon after, files of men in armor and bodies of archers began to assemble and form in line of battle in the market-place. 5

A large portion of this body were in murrey and blue, and in the mounted knight who ordered their array Dick recognized Sir Daniel Brackley.

Then there befell a long pause, which was followed by the almost simultaneous sounding of four trum- 10  
pets from four different quarters of the town. A fifth rang in answer from the market-place, and at the same moment the files began to move, and a shower of arrows rattled about the barricade, and sounded like blows upon the walls of the two flank- 15  
ing houses.

The attack had begun, by a common signal, on all the five issues of the quarter. Gloucester was beleaguered upon every side; and Dick judged, if he would make good his post, he must rely entirely 20  
on the hundred men at his command.

Seven volleys of arrows followed one upon the other, and in the very thick of the discharges Dick was touched from behind upon the arm, and found a page holding out to him a leathern jack, strength- 25  
ened with bright plates of mail.

“It is from my Lord of Gloucester,” said the page. “He hath observed, Sir Richard, that ye went unarmed.”



## The Black Arrow

Dick, with a glow at his heart at being so addressed, got to his feet and, with the assistance of the page, donned the defensive coat. Even as he did so, two arrows rattled harmlessly upon the  
5 plates, and a third struck down the page, mortally wounded, at his feet.

Meanwhile the whole body of the enemy had been steadily drawing nearer across the market-place; and by this time were so close at hand that  
10 Dick gave the order to return their shot. Immediately, from behind the barrier and from the windows of the houses, a counterblast of arrows sped, carrying death. But the Lancastrians, as if they had but waited for a signal, shouted loudly in  
15 answer; and began to close at a run upon the barrier, the horsemen still hanging back, with visors lowered.

Then followed an obstinate and deadly struggle, hand to hand. The assailants, wielding their fal-  
20 chions with one hand, strove with the other to drag down the structure of the barricade. On the other side, the parts were reversed; and the defenders exposed themselves like madmen to protect their rampart. So for some minutes the contest raged  
25 almost in silence, friend and foe falling one upon another. But it is always the easier to destroy; and when a single note upon the tucket recalled the

---

LINE 12. **counterblast**: an answering blast. 19. **falchions**: short, crooked swords.

## The Battle of Shoreby

attacking party from this desperate service, much of the barricade had been removed piecemeal, and the whole fabric had sunk to half its height, and tottered to a general fall.

And now the footmen in the market-place fell <sup>5</sup> back, at a run, on every side. The horsemen, who had been standing in a line two deep, wheeled suddenly, and made their flank into their front; and as swift as a striking adder, the long, steel-clad column was launched upon the ruinous barricade. <sup>10</sup>

Of the first two horsemen, one fell, rider and steed, and was ridden down by his companions. The second leaped clean upon the summit of the rampart, transpiercing an archer with his lance. Almost in the same instant he was dragged from the <sup>15</sup> saddle and his horse dispatched.

And then the full weight and impetus of the charge burst upon and scattered the defenders. The men-at-arms, surmounting their fallen comrades, and carried onward by the fury of their on- <sup>20</sup> slaught, dashed through Dick's broken line and poured thundering up the lane beyond, as a stream bestrides and pours across a broken dam.

Yet was the fight not over. Still, in the narrow jaws of the entrance, Dick and a few survivors plied <sup>25</sup> their bills like woodmen; and already, across the width of the passage, there had been formed a

---

LINE 14. *transpiercing* : piercing through.

## The Black Arrow

second, a higher, and a more effectual rampart of fallen men and horses, lashing in the agonies of death.

Baffled by this fresh obstacle, the remainder of  
5 the cavalry fell back; and as, at the sight of this movement, the flight of the arrows redoubled from the casements of the houses, their retreat had, for a moment, almost degenerated into flight.

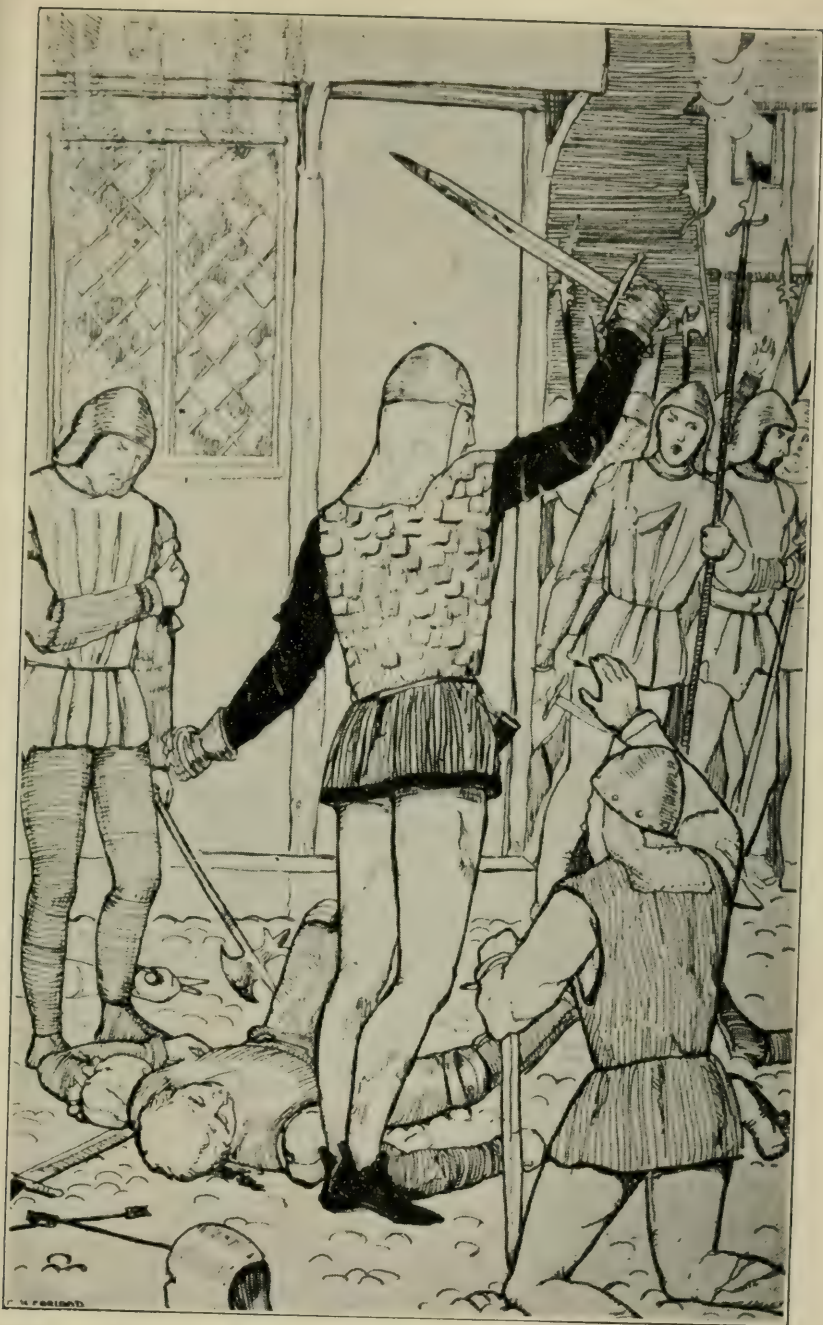
Almost at the same time, those who had crossed  
10 the barricade and charged farther up the street, being met before the door of the Chequers by the formidable hunchback and the whole reserve of the Yorkists, began to come scattering backward, in the excess of disarray and terror.

15 Dick and his fellows faced about, fresh men poured out of the houses; a cruel blast of arrows met the fugitives full in the face, while Gloucester was already riding down their rear; in the inside of a minute and a half there was no living Lancas-  
20 trian in the street.

Then, and not till then, did Dick hold up his reeking blade and give the word to cheer.

Meanwhile Gloucester dismounted from his horse and came forward to inspect the post. His face  
25 was as pale as linen; but his eyes shone in his head like some strange jewel, and his voice, when he spoke, was hoarse and broken with the exultation of battle and success. He looked at the rampart, which neither friend nor foe could now approach





“Then did Dick hold up his reeking blade and give the word to cheer.”





## The Battle of Shoreby

without precaution, so fiercely did the horses struggle in the throes of death, and at the sight of that great carnage he smiled upon one side.

“Dispatch these horses,” he said; “they keep you from your vantage. Richard Shelton,” he added, “ye have pleased me. Kneel.”

The Lancastrians had already resumed their archery, and the shafts fell thick in the mouth of the street; but the duke, minding them not at all, deliberately drew his sword and dubbed Richard a knight upon the spot.

“And now, Sir Richard,” he continued, “if that ye see Lord Risingham, send me an express upon the instant. Were it your last man, let me hear of it incontinently. I had rather venture the post than lose my stroke at him. For mark me, all of ye,” he added, raising his voice, “if Earl Risingham fall by another hand than mine, I shall count this victory a defeat.”

“My lord duke,” said one of his attendants, “is your grace not weary of exposing his dear life unneedfully? Why tarry we here?”

“Catesby,” returned the duke, “here is the battle, not elsewhere. The rest are but feigned onslaughts. Here must we vanquish. And for the exposure — if ye were an ugly hunchback, and the children gecked at you upon the street, ye would

---

LINE 27. **gecked**: jeered.

## The Black Arrow

count your body cheaper, and an hour of glory worth a life. Howbeit, if ye will, let us ride on and visit the other posts. Sir Richard here, my namesake, he shall still hold this entry, where he  
5 wadeth to the ankles in hot blood. Him can we trust. But mark it, Sir Richard, ye are not yet done. The worst is yet toward. Sleep not."

He came right up to young Shelton, looking him hard in the eyes, and taking his hand in both of his,  
10 gave it so extreme a squeeze that the blood had nearly spurted. Dick quailed before his eyes. The insane excitement, the courage, and the cruelty that he read therein, filled him with dismay about the future. This young duke's was indeed a gallant  
15 spirit, to ride foremost in the ranks of war; but after the battle, in the days of peace and in the circle of his trusted friends, that mind, it was to be dreaded, would continue to bring forth the fruits of death.

## CHAPTER III

### The Battle of Shoreby (*Concluded*)

DICK, once more left to his own counsels, began to look about him. The arrow-shot had somewhat slackened. On all sides the enemy were falling back, and the greater part of the market-place was now left empty, the snow here trampled into orange 5 mud, there splashed with gore, scattered all over with dead men and horses, and bristling thick with feathered arrows.

On his own side the loss had been cruel. The jaws of the little street and the ruins of the barricade 10 were heaped with the dead and dying; and out of the hundred men with whom he had begun the battle, there were not seventy left who could still stand to arms.

At the same time the day was passing. The first 15 reinforcements might be looked for to arrive at any moment; and the Lancastrians, already shaken by the result of their desperate but unsuccessful onslaught, were in an ill temper to support a fresh invader. 20

There was a dial in the wall of one of the two flanking houses; and this, in the frosty, winter sunshine, indicated ten of the forenoon.



## The Black Arrow

Dick turned to the man who was at his elbow, a little insignificant archer, binding a cut in his arm.

"It was well fought," he said, "and, by my sooth, they will not charge us twice."

5 "Sir," said the little archer, "ye have fought right well for York, and better for yourself. Never hath man in so brief space prevailed so greatly on the duke's affections. That he should have entrusted such a post to one he knew not is a marvel.  
10 But look to your head, Sir Richard! If ye be vanquished — ay, if ye give way one foot's breadth — axe or cord shall punish it; and I am set if ye do aught doubtful, I will tell you honestly, here to stab you from behind!"

15 Dick looked at the little man in amaze.

"You!" he cried. "And from behind!"

"It is right so," returned the archer, "and because I like not the affair I tell it you. Ye must make the post good, Sir Richard, at your peril.  
20 O, our Crookback is a bold blade and a good warrior; but whether in cold blood or in hot, he will have all things done exact to his commandment. If any fail or hinder, they shall die the death."

"Now, by the saints!" cried Richard, "is this  
25 so? And will men follow such a leader?"

"Nay, they follow him gleefully," replied the other, "for if he be exact to punish, he is most open-handed to reward. And if he spare not the blood and sweat of others, he is ever liberal of his

## The Battle of Shoreby

own, still in the first front of battle, still the last to sleep. He will go far, will Crookback Dick o' Gloucester!"

The young knight, if he had before been brave and vigilant, was now all the more inclined to watchfulness and courage. His sudden favor, he began to perceive, had brought perils in its train. And he turned from the archer, and once more scanned anxiously the market-place. It lay empty as before. 10

"I like not this quietude," he said. "Doubtless they prepare us some surprise."

And, as if in answer to his remark, the archers began once more to advance against the barricade, and the arrows to fall thick. But there was something hesitating in the attack. They came not on roundly, but seemed rather to await a further signal. 15

Dick looked uneasily about him, spying for a hidden danger. And sure enough, about half-way up the little street a door was suddenly opened from within, and the house continued, for some seconds, and both by door and window, to disgorge a torrent of Lancastrian archers. These, as they leaped down, hurriedly stood to their ranks, bent their bows, and proceeded to pour upon Dick's rear a flight of arrows. 20 25

At the same time, the assailants in the market-

---

LINE 22. *disgorge*: send forth.

## The Black Arrow

place redoubled their shot, and began to close in stoutly upon the barricade.

Dick called down his whole command out of the houses, and facing them both ways, and encouraging  
5 their valor both by word and gesture, returned as best he could the double shower of shafts that fell about his post.

Meanwhile house after house was opened in the street, and the Lancastrians continued to pour out  
10 of the doors and leap down from the windows, shouting victory, until the number of enemies upon Dick's rear was almost equal to the number in his face. It was plain that he could hold the post no longer; what was worse, even if he could have held  
15 it, it had now become useless; and the whole Yorkist army lay in a posture of helplessness upon the brink of a complete disaster.

The men behind him formed the vital flaw in the general defense; and it was upon these that Dick  
20 turned, charging at the head of his men. So vigorous was the attack, that the Lancastrian archers gave ground and staggered, and, at last, breaking their ranks, began to crowd back into the houses from which they had so recently and so vainglori-  
25 ously sallied.

Meanwhile the men from the market-place had swarmed across the undefended barricade, and fell

---

LINE 24. *vaingloriously*: with foolish confidence.

## The Battle of Shoreby

on hotly upon the other side; and Dick must once again face about, and proceed to drive them back. Once again the spirit of his men prevailed; they cleared the street in a triumphant style, but even as they did so the others issued again out of the 5 houses, and took them, a third time, upon the rear.

The Yorkists began to be scattered; several times Dick found himself alone among his foes and plying his bright sword for life; several times he was conscious of a hurt. And meanwhile the fight 10 swayed to and fro in the street without determinate result.

Suddenly Dick was aware of a great trumpeting about the outskirts of the town. The war-cry of York began to be rolled up to heaven, as by many 15 and triumphant voices. And at the same time the men in front of him began to give ground rapidly, streaming out of the street and back upon the market-place. Someone gave the word to fly. Trumpets were blown distractedly, some for a rally, some 20 to charge. It was plain that a great blow had been struck, and the Lancastrians were thrown, at least for the moment, into full disorder, and some degree of panic.

And then, like a theater trick, there followed the 25 last act of Shoreby battle. The men in front of Richard turned tail, like a dog that has been whistled home, and fled like the wind. At the same moment there came through the market-place



## The Black Arrow

a storm of horsemen, fleeing and pursuing, the Lancastrians turning back to strike with the sword, the Yorkists riding them down at the point of the lance.

5 Conspicuous in the mellay, Dick beheld the Crookback. He was already giving a foretaste of that furious valor and skill to cut his way across the ranks of war, which, years afterwards upon the field of Bosworth, and when he was stained with  
10 crimes, almost sufficed to change the fortunes of the day and the destiny of the English throne. Evading, striking, riding down, he so forced and so maneuvered his strong horse, so aptly defended himself, and so liberally scattered death to his opponents,  
15 that he was now far ahead of the foremost of his knights, hewing his way, with the truncheon of a bloody sword, to where Lord Risingham was rallying the bravest. A moment more and they had met; the tall, splendid, and famous warrior against  
20 the deformed and sickly boy.

Yet Shelton had never a doubt as to the result; and when the fight next opened for a moment, the figure of the earl had disappeared; but still, in the first of the danger, Crookback Dick was launching  
25 his big horse and plying the truncheon of his sword.

Thus, by Shelton's courage in holding the mouth of the street against the first attack, and by the

---

LINE 5. *mellay*: confusion.

## The Battle of Shoreby

opportune arrival of his seven hundred reinforcements, the lad, who was afterwards to be handed down to the execration of posterity under the name of Richard III., had won his first considerable fight.

5

---

LINE 3. **execration**: curse, shame.

## CHAPTER IV

### The Sack of Shoreby

THERE was not a foe left within striking distance ; and Dick, as he looked ruefully about him on the remainder of his gallant force, began to count the cost of victory. He was himself, now that the dan-  
5 ger was ended, so stiff and sore, so bruised and cut and broken, and, above all, so utterly exhausted by his desperate and unremitting labors in the fight, that he seemed incapable of any fresh exertion.

But this was not yet the hour for repose. Shoreby  
10 had been taken by assault ; and though an open town, and not in any manner to be charged with the resistance, it was plain that these rough fighters would be not less rough now that the fight was over, and that the more horrid part of war  
15 would fall to be enacted. Richard of Gloucester was not the captain to protect the citizens from his infuriated soldiery ; and even if he had the will, it might be questioned if he had the power.

It was therefore Dick's business to find and to  
20 protect Joanna ; and with that end he looked about him at the faces of his men. The three or four

---

LINE 2. **ruefully** : regretfully.

## The Sack of Shoreby

who seemed likeliest to be obedient and to keep sober he drew aside ; and promising them a rich reward and a special recommendation to the duke, led them across the market-place, now empty of horsemen, and into the streets upon the farther side. 5

Every here and there small combats of from two to a dozen still raged upon the open street ; here and there a house was being besieged, the defenders throwing out stools and tables on the heads of the assailants. The snow was strewn with arms 10 and corpses ; but except for these partial combats the streets were deserted, and the houses, some standing open, and some shuttered and barricaded, had for the most part ceased to give out smoke.

Dick, threading the skirts of these skirmishers, 15 led his followers briskly in the direction of the abbey church ; but when he came the length of the main street, a cry of horror broke from his lips. Sir Daniel's great house had been carried by assault. The gates hung in splinters from the hinges, and a 20 double throng kept pouring in and out through the entrance, seeking and carrying booty. Meanwhile, in the upper stories, some resistance was still being offered to the pillagers ; for just as Dick came within eyeshot of the building, a casement was burst open 25 from within, and a poor wretch in murrey and blue, screaming and resisting, was forced through the embrasure and tossed into the street below.

The most sickening apprehension fell upon Dick.



## The Black Arrow

He ran forward like one possessed, forced his way into the house among the foremost, and mounted without pause to the chamber on the third floor where he had last parted from Joanna. It was a mere wreck; the furniture had been overthrown, the cupboards broken open, and in one place a trailing corner of the arras lay smouldering on the embers of the fire.

Dick, almost without thinking, trod out the incipient conflagration, and then stood bewildered. Sir Daniel, Sir Oliver, Joanna, all were gone; but whether butchered in the rout or safe escaped from Shoreby, who should say?

He caught a passing archer by the tabard.

“Fellow,” he asked, “were ye here when this house was taken?”

“Let be,” said the archer. “A murrain! let be, or I strike.”

“Hark ye,” returned Richard, “two can play at that. Stand and be plain.”

But the man, flushed with drink and battle, struck Dick upon the shoulder with one hand, while with the other he twitched away his garment. Thereupon the full wrath of the young leader burst from his control. He seized the fellow in his strong embrace, and crushed him on the plates of his mailed bosom like a child; then, holding him at

---

LINE 9. **incipient conflagration**: newly started fire.  
12. **rout**: overwhelming defeat.

## The Sack of Shoreby

arm's length, he bid him speak as he valued life.

"I pray you mercy!" gasped the archer. "An I had thought ye were so angry I would 'a' been charier of crossing you. I was here indeed." 5

"Know ye Sir Daniel?" pursued Dick.

"Well do I know him," returned the man.

"Was he in the mansion?"

"Ay, sir, he was," answered the archer, "but even as we entered by the yard gate he rode forth 10 by the garden."

"Alone?" cried Dick.

"He may 'a' had a score of lances with him," said the man.

"Lances! No women, then?" asked Shelton. 15

"Troth, I saw not," said the archer. "But there were none in the house, if that be your quest."

"I thank you," said Dick. "Here is a piece for your pains." But groping in his wallet, Dick found nothing. "Inquire for me to-morrow," he 20 added — "Richard Shel — Sir Richard Shelton," he corrected, "and I will see you handsomely rewarded."

And then an idea struck Dick. He hastily descended to the courtyard, ran with all his might 25 across the garden, and came to the great door of the church. It stood wide open; within, every

---

LINE 5. **charier**: more careful.

## The Black Arrow

corner of the pavement was crowded with fugitive burghers, surrounded by their families and laden with the most precious of their possessions, while, at the high altar, priests in full canonicals were imploring the mercy of God. Even as Dick entered, the loud chorus began to thunder in the vaulted roofs.

He hurried through the groups of refugees, and came to the door of the stair that led into the steeple. And here a tall churchman stepped before him and arrested his advance.

“Whither, my son?” he asked severely.

“My father,” answered Dick, “I am here upon an errand of expedition. Stay me not. I command here for my Lord of Gloucester.”

“For my Lord of Gloucester?” repeated the priest. “Hath, then, the battle gone so sore?”

“The battle, father, is at an end, Lancaster clean sped, my Lord of Risingham — Heaven rest him! — left upon the field. And now, with your good leave, I follow mine affairs.” And thrusting on one side the priest, who seemed stupefied at the news, Dick pushed open the door and rattled up the stairs four at a bound, and without pause or stumble, till he stepped upon the open platform at the top.

Shoreby church tower not only commanded the town, as in a map, but looked far, on both sides,

---

LINE 2. **burghers**: villagers. 4. **canonicals**: robes of the church. 14. **expedition**: haste, emergency.

## The Sack of Shoreby

over sea and land. It was now near upon noon, the day exceedingly bright, the snow dazzling. And as Dick looked around him, he could measure the consequences of the battle.

A confused growling uproar reached him from <sup>5</sup> the streets, and now and then, but very rarely, the clash of steel. Not a ship, not so much as a skiff remained in the harbor; but the sea was dotted with sails and rowboats laden with fugitives. On shore, too, the surface of the snowy meadows was <sup>10</sup> broken up with bands of horsemen, some cutting their way towards the borders of the forest, others, who were doubtless of the Yorkist side, stoutly interposing and beating them back upon the town. Over all the open ground there lay a prodigious <sup>15</sup> quantity of fallen men and horses, clearly defined upon the snow.

To complete the picture, those of the foot soldiers as had not found place upon a ship still kept up an archery combat on the borders of the port, and <sup>20</sup> from the cover of the shoreside taverns. In that quarter, also, one or two houses had been fired, and the smoke towered high in the frosty sunlight, and blew off to sea in voluminous folds.

Already close upon the margin of the woods, and <sup>25</sup> somewhat in the line of Holywood, one particular clump of fleeing horsemen riveted the attention of

---

LINE 15. prodigious: vast. 24. voluminous: immense.



## The Black Arrow

the young watcher on the tower. It was fairly numerous; in no other quarter of the field did so many Lancastrians still hold together; thus they had left a wide, discolored wake upon the snow, and Dick was able to trace them step by step from where they had left the town.

While Dick stood watching them, they had gained unopposed the first fringe of the leafless forest, and turning a little from their direction, the sun fell for a moment full on their array, as it was relieved against the dusky wood.

“Murrey and blue!” cried Dick. “I swear it — murrey and blue!”

The next moment he was descending the stairway.

It was now his business to seek out the Duke of Gloucester, who, alone, in the disorder of the forces, might be able to supply him with a sufficiency of men. The fighting in the main town was now practically at an end; and as Dick ran hither and thither, seeking the commander, the streets were thick with wandering soldiers, some laden with more booty than they could well stagger under, others shouting drunk. None of them, when questioned, had the least notion of the duke's whereabouts; and, at last, it was by sheer good fortune that Dick found him, where he sat in the saddle, directing operations to dislodge the archers from the harbor side.

## The Sack of Shoreby

“Sir Richard Shelton, ye are well found,” he said. “I owe you one thing that I value little, my life; and one that I can never pay you for, this victory. Catesby, if I had ten such captains as Sir Richard, I would march forthright on London. But now, 5  
sir, claim your reward.”

“Freely, my lord,” said Dick, “freely and loudly. One hath escaped to whom I owe some grudges, and taken with him one whom I owe love and service. Give me, then, fifty lances, that I may pursue; and for any obligation that your graciousness is pleased to allow, it shall be clean discharged.” 10

“How call ye him?” inquired the duke.

“Sir Daniel Brackley,” answered Richard.

“Out upon him, double-face!” cried Gloucester. 15  
“Here is no reward, Sir Richard; here is fresh service offered, and, if that ye bring his head to me, fresh debt upon my conscience. Catesby, get him these lances; and you, sir, bethink ye, in the meanwhile, what pleasure, honor, or profit it shall 20  
be mine to give you.”

Just then the Yorkist skirmishers carried one of the shoreside taverns, swarming in upon it on three sides, and driving out or taking its defenders. Crookback Dick was pleased to cheer the exploit, 25  
and pushing his horse a little nearer, called to see the prisoners.

There were four or five of them — two men of my Lord Shoreby’s and one of Lord Risingham’s among

## The Black Arrow

the number, and last, but in Dick's eyes not least, a tall, shambling, grizzled old shipman, between drunk and sober, and with a dog whimpering and jumping at his heels.

5 The young duke passed them for a moment under a severe review.

“Good,” he said. “Hang them.”

And he turned the other way to watch the progress of the fight.

10 “My lord,” said Dick, “so please you, I have found my reward. Grant me the life and liberty of yon old shipman.”

Gloucester turned and looked the speaker in the face.

15 “Sir Richard,” he said, “I make not war with peacock's feathers, but steel shafts. Those that are mine enemies I slay, and that without excuse or favor. For, bethink ye, in this realm of England, that is so torn in pieces, there is not a man of mine  
20 but hath a brother or a friend upon the other party. If, then, I did begin to grant these pardons, I might sheathe my sword.”

“It may be so, my lord; and yet I will be overbold, and, at the risk of your disfavor, recall your  
25 lordship's promise,” replied Dick.

Richard of Gloucester flushed.

“Mark it right well,” he said, harshly. “I love not mercy, nor yet mercy-mongers. Ye have this

---

LINE 28. **mercy-mongers**: those who deal out mercy.

## The Sack of Shoreby

day laid the foundations of high fortune. If ye oppose to me my word, which I have plighted, I will yield. But, by the glory of heaven, there your favor dies!"

"Mine is the loss," said Dick. 5

"Give him his sailor," said the duke; and wheeling his horse, he turned his back upon young Shelton.

Dick was nor glad nor sorry. He had seen too much of the young duke to set great store on his 10 affection; and the origin and growth of his own favor had been too flimsy and too rapid to inspire much confidence. One thing alone he feared — that the vindictive leader might revoke the offer of the lances. But here he did justice neither to 15 Gloucester's honor (such as it was) nor, above all, to his decision. If he had once judged Dick to be the right man to pursue Sir Daniel, he was not one to change; and he soon proved it by shouting after Catesby to be speedy, for the paladin was 20 waiting.

In the meanwhile, Dick turned to the old shipman, who had seemed equally indifferent to his condemnation and to his subsequent release.

"Arblaster," said Dick, "I have done you ill; 25 but now, by the rood, I think I have cleared the score."

But the old skipper only looked upon him dully and held his peace.



## The Black Arrow

“Come,” continued Dick, “a life is a life, old shrew, and it is more than ships or liquor. Say ye forgive me; for if your life is worth nothing to you, it hath cost me the beginnings of my fortune.  
5 Come, I have paid for it dearly; be not so churlish.”

“An I had had my ship,” said Arblaster, “I would ’a’ been forth and safe on the high seas — I and my man Tom. But ye took my ship, gossip,  
10 and I’m a beggar; and for my man Tom, a knave fellow in russet shot him down. ‘Murrain!’ quoth he, and spake never again. ‘Murrain’ was the last of his words, and the poor spirit of him passed. ‘A will never sail no more, will my Tom.’”

15 Dick was seized with unavailing penitence and pity; he sought to take the skipper’s hand, but Arblaster avoided his touch.

“Nay,” said he, “let be. Y’ have played the devil with me, and let that content you.”

20 The words died in Richard’s throat. He saw, through tears, the poor old man, bemused with liquor and sorrow, go shambling away, with bowed head, across the snow, and the unnoticed dog whimpering at his heels; and for the first time began to  
25 understand the desperate game that we play in life, and how a thing once done is not to be changed or remedied by any penitence.

---

LINE 21. **bemused**: confused.

## The Sack of Shoreby

But there was no time left to him for vain regret. Catesby had now collected the horsemen, and riding up to Dick he dismounted, and offered him his own horse.

“This morning,” he said, “I was somewhat jealous of your favor ; it hath not been of a long growth ; and now, Sir Richard, it is with a very good heart that I offer you this horse — to ride away with.”

“Suffer me yet a moment,” replied Dick. “This favor of mine — whereupon was it founded?” 10

“Upon your name,” answered Catesby. “It is my lord’s chief superstition. Were my name Richard, I should be an earl to-morrow.”

“Well, sir, I thank you,” returned Dick, “and since I am little likely to follow these great fortunes, 15 I will even say farewell. I will not pretend I was displeased to think myself upon the road to fortune ; but I will not pretend, neither, that I am over sorry to be done with it. Command and riches, they are brave things, to be sure ; but a word in your ear — 20 you duke of yours, he is a fearsome lad.”

Catesby laughed.

“Nay,” said he, “of a verity he that rides with Crooked Dick will ride deep. Well, God keep us all from evil ! Speed ye well.” 25

Thereupon Dick put himself at the head of his men, and giving the word of command, rode off.

He made straight across the town, following what he supposed to be the route of Sir Daniel,

## The Black Arrow

and spying around for any signs that might decide if he were right.

The streets were strewn with the dead and the wounded, whose fate, in the bitter frost, was far  
5 the more pitiable. Gangs of the victors went from house to house, pillaging and stabbing, and sometimes singing together as they went.

From different quarters, as he rode on, the sounds of violence and outrage came to young Shelton's  
10 ears; now the blows of the sledge-hammer on some barricaded door, and now the miserable shrieks of women.

Dick's heart had just been awakened. He had just seen the cruel consequences of his own beha-  
15 vior; and the thought of the sum of misery that was now acting in the whole of Shoreby filled him with despair.

At length he reached the outskirts, and there, sure enough, he saw straight before him the same  
20 broad, beaten track across the snow that he had marked from the summit of the church. Here, then, he went the faster on; but still, as he rode, he kept a bright eye upon the fallen men and horses that lay beside the track. Many of these, he was  
25 relieved to see, wore Sir Daniel's colors, and the faces of some, who lay upon their backs, he even recognized.

About half-way between the town and the forest, those whom he was following had plainly been as-

## The Sack of Shoreby

sailed by archers ; for the corpses lay pretty closely scattered, each pierced by an arrow. And here Dick spied among the rest the body of a very young lad, whose face was somehow hauntingly familiar to him.

5

He halted his troop, dismounted, and raised the lad's head. As he did so, the hood fell back, and a profusion of long brown hair unrolled itself. At the same time the eyes opened.

"Ah ! lion-driver !" said a feeble voice. "She is 10 farther on. Ride — ride fast !"

And then the poor young lady fainted once again.

One of Dick's men carried a flask of some strong cordial, and with this Dick succeeded in reviving consciousness. Then he took Joanna's friend upon 15 his saddle-bow, and once more pushed toward the forest.

"Why do ye take me?" said the girl. "Ye but delay your speed."

"Nay, Mistress Risingham," replied Dick. 20 "Shoreby is full of blood and drunkenness and riot. Here ye are safe ; content ye."

"I will not be beholden to any of your faction," she cried ; "set me down."

"Madam, ye know not what ye say," returned 25 Dick. "Y' are hurt — —"

"I am not," she said. "It was my horse was slain."

"It matters not one jot," replied Richard. "Ye



## The Black Arrow

are here in the midst of open snow, and compassed about with enemies. Whether ye will or not, I carry you with me. Glad am I to have the occasion; for thus shall I repay some portion of our  
5 debt.”

For a little while she was silent. Then, very suddenly, she asked :

“My uncle?”

“My Lord Risingham?” returned Dick. “I  
10 would I had good news to give you, madam; but I have none. I saw him once in the battle and once only. Let us hope the best.”

## CHAPTER V

### Night in the Woods: Alicia Risingham

It was almost certain that Sir Daniel had made for the Moat House; but, considering the heavy snow, the lateness of the hour, and the necessity under which he would lie of avoiding the few roads and striking across the wood, it was equally certain <sup>5</sup> that he could not hope to reach it ere the morrow.

There were two courses open to Dick; either to continue to follow in the knight's trail, and, if he were able, to fall upon him that very night in camp; or to strike out a path of his own, and seek to place <sup>10</sup> himself between Sir Daniel and his destination.

Either scheme was open to serious objection, and Dick, who feared to expose Joanna to the hazards of a fight, had not yet decided between them when he reached the borders of the wood. <sup>15</sup>

At this point Sir Daniel had turned a little to his left, and then plunged straight under a grove of very lofty timber. His party had then formed to a narrower front, in order to pass between the trees, and the track was trod proportionately deeper in <sup>20</sup> the snow. The eye followed it, under the leafless tracery of the oaks, running direct and narrow;

## The Black Arrow

the trees stood over it, with knotty joints and the great, uplifted forest of their boughs; there was no sound, whether of man or beast — not so much as the stirring of a robin; and over the field of snow the winter sun lay golden among netted shadows.

“How say ye,” asked Dick of one of the men, “to follow straight on, or strike across for Tunstall?”

“Sir Richard,” replied the man-at-arms, “I would follow the line until they scatter.”

“Ye are, doubtless, right,” returned Dick, “but we came right hastily upon the errand, even as the time commanded. Here are no houses, neither for food nor shelter, and by the morrow’s dawn we shall know both cold fingers and an empty belly. How say ye, lads? Will ye stand a pinch for expedition’s sake, or shall we turn by Holywood and sup with Mother Church? The case being somewhat doubtful, I will drive no man; yet if ye would suffer me to lead you, ye would choose the first.”

The men answered, almost with one voice, that they would follow Sir Richard where he would.

And Dick, setting spur to his horse, began once more to go forward.

The snow in the trail had been trodden very hard, and the pursuers had thus a great advantage over the pursued. They pushed on, indeed, at a round trot, two hundred hoofs beating alternately on the dull pavement of the snow, and the jingle of weapons

## Night in the Woods

and the snorting of horses raising a warlike noise along the arches of the silent wood.

Presently, the wide slot of the pursued came out upon the high-road from Holywood; it was there, for a moment, indistinguishable; and, where it once more plunged into the unbeaten snow upon the farther side, Dick was surprised to see it narrower and lighter trod. Plainly, profiting by the road, Sir Daniel had begun already to scatter his command. 10

At all hazards, one chance being equal to another, Dick continued to pursue the straight trail; and that, after an hour's riding, in which it led into the very depths of the forest, suddenly split, like a bursting shell, into two dozen others, leading to 15 every point of the compass.

Dick drew bridle in despair. The short winter's day was near an end; the sun, a dull red orange, shorn of rays, swam low among the leafless thickets; the shadows were a mile long upon the snow; the 20 frost bit cruelly at the finger-nails; and the breath and steam of the horses mounted in a cloud.

"Well, we are outwitted," Dick confessed. "Strike we for Holywood, after all. It is still nearer us than Tunstall — or should be by the 25 station of the sun."

So they wheeled to their left, turning their backs on the red shield of sun, and made across country for the abbey. But now times were changed with



## The Black Arrow

them; they could no longer spank forth briskly on a path beaten firm by the passage of their foes, and for a goal to which that path itself conducted them. Now they must plough at a dull pace through the  
5 encumbering snow, continually pausing to decide their course, continually floundering in drifts. The sun soon left them; the glow of the west decayed; and presently they were wandering in a shadow of blackness, under frosty stars.

10 Presently, indeed, the moon would clear the hill-tops, and they might resume their march. But till then, every random step might carry them wider of their march. There was nothing for it but to camp and wait.

15 Sentries were posted; a spot of ground was cleared of snow, and after some failures, a good fire blazed in the midst. The men-at-arms sat close about this forest hearth, sharing such provisions as they had, and passing about the flask; and Dick,  
20 having collected the most delicate of the rough and scanty fare, brought it to Lord Risingham's niece, where she sat apart from the soldiery against a tree.

She sat upon one horse-cloth, wrapped in another, and stared straight before her at the firelit scene.  
25 At the offer of food she started, like one wakened from a dream, and then silently refused.

“Madam,” said Dick, “let me beseech you, punish me not so cruelly. Wherein I have offended you, I know not; I have, indeed, carried you away,

## Night in the Woods

but with a friendly violence ; I have, indeed, exposed you to the inclemency of night, but the hurry that lies upon me hath for its end the preservation of another, who is no less frail and no less unfriended than yourself. At least, madam, punish not your-<sup>5</sup> self ; and eat, if not for hunger, then for strength."

"I will eat nothing at the hands that slew my kinsman," she replied.

"Dear madam," Dick cried, "I swear to you upon the rood I touched him not." 10

"Swear to me that he still lives," she returned.

"I will not palter with you," answered Dick. "Pity bids me to wound you. In my heart I do believe him dead."

"And ye ask me to eat!" she cried. "Ay, and <sup>15</sup> they call you 'sir'! Y' have won your spurs by my good kinsman's murder. And had I not been fool and traitor both, and saved you in your enemy's house, ye should have died the death, and he — he that was worth twelve of you — were living." 20

"I did but my man's best, even as your kinsman did upon the other party," answered Dick. "Were he still living — as I vow to Heaven I wish it! — he would praise, not blame me."

"Sir Daniel has told me," she replied. "He <sup>25</sup> marked you at the barricade. Upon you, he saith, their party foundered; it was you that won the

---

LINE 2. **inclemency**: severe cold. 12. **palter**: trifle or deceive. 27. **foundered**: was ruined.

## The Black Arrow

battle. Well, then, it was you that killed my good Lord Risingham, as sure as though ye had strangled him. And ye would have me eat with you — and your hands not washed from killing? But Sir  
5 Daniel hath sworn your downfall. He 'tis that will avenge me!"

The unfortunate Dick was plunged in gloom. Old Arblaster returned upon his mind, and he groaned aloud.

10 "Do ye hold me so guilty?" he said, "you that defended me — you that are Joanna's friend?"

"What made ye in the battle?" she retorted. "Y' are of no party; y' are but a lad — but legs and body, without government of wit or counsel!  
15 Wherefore did ye fight? For the love of hurt, pardy!"

"Nay," cried Dick, "I know not. But as the realm of England goes, if that a poor gentleman fight not upon the one side, perforce he must fight  
20 upon the other. He may not stand alone, 'tis not in nature."

"They that have no judgment should not draw the sword," replied the young lady. "Ye that fight but for a hazard, what are ye but a butcher?  
25 War is but noble by the cause, and y' have disgraced it."

"Madam," said the miserable Dick, "I do partly see mine error. I have made too much haste; I have been busy before my time. Already I stole a

## Night in the Woods

ship — thinking, I do swear it, to do well — and thereby brought about the death of many innocent, and the grief and ruin of a poor old man whose face this very day hath stabbed me like a dagger. And for this morning, I did but design to do myself 5 credit, and get fame to marry with, and, behold! I have brought about the death of your dear kinsman that was good to me. And what besides, I know not. For, alas! I may have set York upon the throne, and that may be the worser cause, and may 10 do hurt to England. O! madam, I do see my sin. I am unfit for life. I will, for penance sake and to avoid worse evil, once I have finished this adventure, get me to a cloister. I will forswear Joanna and the trade of arms. I will be a friar, and pray for 15 your good kinsman's spirit all my days."

It appeared to Dick, in this extremity of his humiliation and repentance, that the young lady had laughed.

Raising his countenance, he found her looking 20 down upon him, in the firelight, with a somewhat peculiar but not unkind expression.

"Madam," he cried, thinking the laughter to have been an illusion of his hearing, but still, from her changed looks, hoping to have touched her 25 heart — "madam, will not this content you? I give up all to undo what I have done amiss; I make heaven certain for Lord Risingham. And all this upon the very day that I have won my spurs,



## The Black Arrow

and thought myself the happiest young gentleman on ground."

"O, boy," she said — "good boy!"

And then, to the extreme surprise of Dick, she first very tenderly wiped the tears away from his cheeks, and then, as if yielding to a sudden impulse, threw both her arms about his neck, drew up his face, and kissed him. A pitiful bewilderment came over simple-minded Dick.

10 "But come," she said, with great cheerfulness, "you that are a captain, ye must eat. Why sup ye not?"

"Dear Mistress Risingham," replied Dick, "I did but wait first upon my prisoner; but, to say 15 truth, penitence will no longer suffer me to endure the sight of food. I were better to fast, dear lady, and to pray."

"Call me Alicia," she said; "are we not old friends? And now, come, I will eat with you, bit 20 for bit and sup for sup; so if ye eat not, neither will I; but if ye eat hearty, I will dine like a plowman."

So there and then she fell to; and Dick, who had an excellent stomach, proceeded to bear her company, at first with great reluctance, but gradually, 25 as he entered into the spirit, with more and more vigor and devotion; until, at last, he forgot even to watch his model, and most heartily repaid the expenses of his day of labor and excitement.

## Night in the Woods

“Lion-driver,” she said, at length, “ye do not admire a maid in a man’s jerkin?”

The moon was now up; and they were only waiting to repose the wearied horses. By the moon’s light, the still penitent but now well-fed Richard beheld her looking somewhat coquettishly down upon him.

“Madam ——,” he stammered, surprised at this new turn in her manners.

“Nay,” she interrupted, “it skills not to deny; Joanna hath told me; but come, Sir Lion-driver, look at me — am I so homely? — come!”

And she made bright eyes at him.

“Ye are something smallish, indeed ——,” began Dick.

15

And here again she interrupted him, this time with a ringing peal of laughter that completed his confusion and surprise.

“Smallish!” she cried. “Nay, now, be honest as ye are bold; I am a dwarf, or little better; but for all that — come, tell me! — for all that, passably fair to look upon; is’t not so?”

“Nay, madam, exceedingly fair,” said the distressed knight, pitifully trying to seem easy.

“And a man would be right glad to wed me?” she pursued.

“O, madam, right glad!” agreed Dick.

“Call me Alicia,” said she.

“Alicia,” quoth Sir Richard.

## The Black Arrow

“Well, then, lion-driver,” she continued, “sith that ye slew my kinsman, and left me without stay, ye owe me, in honor, every reparation; do ye not?”

5 “I do, madam,” said Dick. “Although, upon my heart, I do hold me but partially guilty of that brave knight’s blood.”

“Would ye evade me?” she cried.

“Madam, not so. I have told you; at your  
10 bidding, I will even turn me a monk,” said Richard.

“Then, in honor, ye belong to me?” she concluded.

“In honor, madam, I suppose ——” began the young man.

15 “Go to!” she interrupted; “ye are too full of catches. In honor do ye belong to me, till ye have paid the evil?”

“In honor I do,” said Dick.

“Hear, then,” she continued. “Ye would make  
20 but a sad friar, methinks; and since I am to dispose of you at pleasure, I will even take you for my husband. Nay, now, no words!” cried she. “They will avail you nothing. For see how just it is, that you who deprived me of one home, should  
25 supply me with another. And as for Joanna, she will be the first, believe me, to commend the change; for, after all, as we be dear friends, what matters it with which of us ye wed? Not one whit!”

## Night in the Woods

“Madam,” said Dick, “I will go into a cloister, an ye please to bid me; but to wed with anyone in this big world besides Joanna Sedley is what I will consent to neither for man’s force nor yet for lady’s pleasure. Pardon me if I speak my plain thoughts 5 plainly; but where a maid is very bold, a poor man must even be the bolder.”

“Dick,” she said, “ye sweet boy, ye must come and kiss me for that word. Nay, fear not, ye shall kiss me for Joanna, and when we meet I shall give 10 it back to her, and say I stole it. And as for what ye owe me, why, dear simpleton, methinks ye were not alone in that great battle; and even if York be on the throne, it was not you that set him there. But for a good, sweet, honest heart, Dick, y’ are all 15 that; and if I could find it in my soul to envy your Joanna anything, I would even envy her your love.”



## CHAPTER VI

### Night in the Woods (*Concluded*): Dick and Joan

THE horses had by this time finished the small store of provender, and fully breathed from their fatigues. At Dick's command the fire was smothered in snow; and while his men got once more  
5 wearily to saddle, he himself, remembering, somewhat late, true woodland caution, chose a tall oak, and nimbly clambered to the topmost fork. Hence he could look far abroad on the moonlit and snow-paven forest. On the southwest, dark against  
10 the horizon, stood those upland heathy quarters where he and Joanna had met with the terrifying misadventure of the leper. And there his eye was caught by a spot of ruddy brightness no bigger than a needle's eye.

15 He blamed himself sharply for his previous neglect. Were that, as it appeared to be, the shining of Sir Daniel's camp-fire, he should long ago have seen and marched for it; above all, he should, for no consideration, have announced his  
20 neighborhood by lighting a fire of his own. But now he must no longer squander valuable hours.

---

LINE 2. **provender**: food.

## Night in the Woods

The direct way to the uplands was about two miles in length: but it was crossed by a very deep, precipitous dingle, impassable to mounted men; and for the sake of speed, it seemed to Dick advisable to desert the horses and attempt the adventure on foot.

Ten men were left to guard the horses; signals were agreed upon by which they could communicate in case of need; and Dick set forth at the head of the remainder, Alicia Risingham walking stoutly <sup>10</sup> by his side.

The men had freed themselves of heavy armor, and left behind their lances; and they now marched with a very good spirit in the frozen snow, and under the exhilarating luster of the moon. The <sup>15</sup> descent into the dingle, where a stream strained sobbing through the snow and ice, was effected with silence and order; and on the further side, being then within a short half-mile of where Dick had seen the glimmer of the fire, the party halted <sup>20</sup> to breathe before the attack.

In the vast silence of the wood, the lightest sounds were audible from far; and Alicia, who was keen of hearing, held up her finger warningly, and stooped to listen. All followed her example; <sup>25</sup> but besides the groans of the choked brook in the dingle close behind, and the barking of a fox at a

---

LINE 3. **dingle**: a narrow valley.

## The Black Arrow

distance of many miles among the forest, to Dick's acutest hearkening not a breath was audible.

"But yet, for sure, I heard the clash of harness," whispered Alicia.

5 "Madam," returned Dick, who was more afraid of that young lady than of ten stout warriors, "I would not hint ye were mistaken; but it might well have come from either of the camps."

"It came not thence. It came from westward,"  
10 she declared.

"It may be what it will," returned Dick, "and it must be as Heaven please. Reck we not a jot, but push on the livelier, and put it to the touch. Up, friends — enough breathed."

15 As they advanced, the snow became more and more trampled with hoof-marks, and it was plain that they were drawing near to the encampment of a considerable force of mounted men. Presently they could see the smoke pouring from among  
20 the trees, ruddily colored on its lower edge and scattering bright sparks.

And here, pursuant to Dick's orders, his men began to open out, creeping stealthily in the covert, to surround on every side the camp of their op-  
25 ponents. He himself, placing Alicia in the shelter of a bulky oak, stole straight forth in the direction of the fire.

---

LINE 22. *pursuant to*: in accordance with.

## Night in the Woods

At last, through an opening of the wood, his eye embraced the scene of the encampment. The fire had been built upon a heathy hummock of the ground, surrounded on three sides by thicket, and it now burned very strong, roaring aloud and brandishing flames. Around it there sat not quite a dozen people, warmly cloaked; but though the neighboring snow was trampled down as by a regiment, Dick looked in vain for any horse. He began to have a terrible misgiving that he was outmaneuvered. At the same time, in a tall man with a steel salet, who was spreading his hands before the blaze, he recognized his old friend and still kindly enemy, Bennet Hatch; and in two others, sitting a little back, he made out, even in their male disguise, Joanna Sedley and Sir Daniel's wife.

"Well," thought he to himself, "even if I lose my horses, let me get my Joanna, and why should I complain?"

And then, from the further side of the encampment, there came a little whistle, announcing that his men had joined, and the investment was complete.

Bennet, at the sound, started to his feet; but ere he had time to spring upon his arms, Dick hailed him.

"Bennet," he said — "Bennet, old friend, yield

---

LINE 3. **hummock**: hillock. 22. **the investment**: the surrounding of the camp.



## The Black Arrow

ye. Ye will but spill men's lives in vain if ye resist."

"'Tis Master Shelton, by St. Barbary!" cried Hatch. "Yield me? Ye ask much. What force  
5 have ye?"

"I tell you, Bennet, ye are both outnumbered and begirt," said Dick. "Cæsar and Charlemagne would cry for quarter. I have two score men at my whistle, and with one shoot of arrows I could  
10 answer for you all."

"Master Dick," said Bennet, "it goes against my heart; but I must do my duty. The saints help you!" And therewith he raised a little tucket to his mouth and wound a rousing call.

15 Then followed a moment of confusion; for while Dick, fearing for the ladies, still hesitated to give the word to shoot, Hatch's little band sprang to their weapons and formed back to back as for a fierce resistance. In the hurry of their change of  
20 place, Joanna sprang from her seat and ran like an arrow to her lover's side.

"Here, Dick!" she cried, as she clasped his hand in hers.

But Dick still stood irresolute; he was yet young  
25 to the more deplorable necessities of war, and the thought of old Lady Brackley checked the command upon his tongue. His own men became

---

LINE 7. **begirt**: surrounded.

## Night in the Woods

restive. Some of them cried on him by name; others, of their own accord, began to shoot; and at the first discharge poor Bennet bit the dust. Then Dick awoke.

“On!” he cried. “Shoot, boys, and keep to cover. England and York!”

But just then the dull beat of many horses on the snow suddenly arose in the hollow ear of the night, and, with incredible swiftness, drew nearer and swelled louder. At the same time, answering <sup>10</sup> tuckets repeated and repeated Hatch’s call.

“Rally, rally!” cried Dick. “Rally upon me! Rally for your lives!”

But his men — afoot, scattered, taken in the hour when they had counted on an easy triumph — <sup>15</sup> began, instead, to give ground severally, and either stood wavering or dispersed into the thickets. And when the first of the horsemen came charging through the open avenues and fiercely riding their steeds into the underwood, a few stragglers were <sup>20</sup> overthrown or speared among the brush, but the bulk of Dick’s command had simply melted at the rumor of their coming.

Dick stood for a moment, bitterly recognizing the fruits of his precipitate and unwise valor. Sir <sup>25</sup> Daniel had seen the fire; he had moved out with his main force, whether to attack his pursuers or to take them in the rear if they should venture the

---

LINE 25. precipitate: hasty.

## The Black Arrow

assault. His had been throughout the part of a sagacious captain; Dick's the conduct of an eager boy. And here was the young knight, his sweet-heart, indeed, holding him tightly by the hand, but  
5 otherwise alone, his whole command of men and horses dispersed in the night and the wide forest, like a paper of pins in a hay barn.

"The saints enlighten me!" he thought. "It is well I was knighted for this morning's matter;  
10 this doth me little honor."

And thereupon, still holding Joanna, he began to run.

The silence of the night was now shattered by the shouts of the men of Tunstall, as they galloped  
15 hither and thither, hunting fugitives; and Dick broke boldly through the underwood and ran straight before him like a deer. The silver clearness of the moon upon the open snow increased, by contrast, the obscurity of the thickets; and  
20 the extreme dispersion of the vanquished led the pursuers into widely divergent paths. Hence, in but a little while, Dick and Joanna paused, in a close covert, and heard the sounds of the pursuit, scattering abroad, indeed, in all directions, but yet  
25 fainting already in the distance.

"An I had but kept a reserve of them together," Dick cried bitterly, "I could have turned the tables yet! Well, we live and learn; next time it shall go better, by the rood."







“ Ay, dear, ye are my lady now.”

## Night in the Woods

“Nay, Dick,” said Joanna, “what matters it? Here we are together once again.”

He looked at her, and there she was — John Matcham, as of yore, in hose and doublet. But now he knew her; now, even in that ungainly dress, <sup>5</sup> she smiled upon him, bright with love; and his heart was transported with joy.

“Sweetheart,” he said, “if ye forgive this blunderer, what care I? Make we direct for Holywood; there lieth your good guardian and my <sup>10</sup> better friend, Lord Foxham. There shall we be wed; and whether poor or wealthy, famous or unknown, what matters it? This day, dear love, I won my spurs; I was commended by great men for my valor; I thought myself the goodliest man <sup>15</sup> of war in all broad England. Then, first, I fell out of my favor with the great; and now have I been well thrashed, and clean lost my soldiers. There was a downfall for conceit! But, dear, I care not — dear, if ye still love me and will wed, I would <sup>20</sup> have my knighthood done away, and mind it not a jot.”

“My Dick!” she cried. “And did they knight you?”

“Ay, dear, ye are my lady now,” he answered, <sup>25</sup> fondly, “or ye shall, ere noon to-morrow — will ye not?”

“That will I, Dick, with a glad heart,” she answered.

## The Black Arrow

“Ay, sir? Methought ye were to be a monk!”  
said a voice in their ears.

“Alicia!” cried Joanna.

“Even so,” replied the young lady, coming forward. “Alicia, whom ye left for dead, and whom your lion-driver found, and brought to life again, and, by my sooth, made love to, if ye want to know.”

“I’ll not believe it,” cried Joanna. “Dick!”

10 “Dick!” mimicked Alicia. “Dick, indeed! Ay, fair sir, and ye desert poor damsels in distress,” she continued, turning to the young knight. “Ye leave them planted behind oaks. But they say true, the age of chivalry is dead.”

15 “Madam,” cried Dick, in despair, “upon my soul I had forgotten you outright. Madam, ye must try to pardon me. Ye see, I had new found Joanna!”

“I did not suppose that ye had done it o’  
20 purpose,” she retorted. “But I will be cruelly avenged. I will tell a secret to my Lady Shelton — she that is to be,” she added, curtseying. “Joanna,” she continued, “I believe, upon my soul, your sweetheart is a bold fellow in a fight,  
25 but he is, let me tell you plainly, the softest-hearted simpleton in England. Go to — ye may do your pleasure with him! And now, fool children, first kiss me, either one of you, for luck and kindness: and then kiss each other just one minute

## Night in the Woods

by the glass, and not one second longer; and then let us all three set forth for Holywood as fast as we can stir; for these woods, methinks, are full of peril and exceeding cold."

"But did my Dick make love to you?" asked 5 Joanna, clinging to her sweetheart's side.

"Nay, fool girl," returned Alicia, "it was I made love to him. I offered to marry him, indeed; but he bade me go marry with my likes. These were his words. Nay, that I will say: he is more plain 10 than pleasant. But now, children, for the sake of sense set forward. Shall we go once more over the dingle, or push straight for Holywood?"

"Why," said Dick, "I would like dearly to get upon a horse; for I have been sore mauled and 15 beaten, one way and another, these last days, and my poor body is one bruise. But how think ye? If the men, upon the alarm of the fighting, had fled away, we should have gone about for nothing. 'Tis but some three short miles to Holywood direct; 20 the bell hath not beat nine; the snow is pretty firm to walk upon, the moon clear; how if we went even as we are?"

"Agreed," cried Alicia; but Joanna only pressed upon Dick's arm. 25

Forth, then, they went, through open leafless groves and down snow-clad alleys, under the white

---

LINE 1. glass: hourglass.



## The Black Arrow

face of the winter moon; Dick and Joanna walking hand in hand and in a heaven of pleasure; and their light-minded companion, her own bereavements heartily forgotten, followed a pace or two  
5 behind, now rallying them upon their silence, and now drawing happy pictures of their future and united lives.

Still, indeed, in the distance of the wood, the riders of Tunstall might be heard urging their  
10 pursuit; and from time to time cries or the clash of steel announced the shock of enemies. But in these young folk, bred among the alarms of war, and fresh from such a multiplicity of dangers, neither fear nor pity could be lightly wakened.  
15 Content to find the sounds still drawing farther and farther away, they gave up their hearts to the enjoyment of the hour, walking already, as Alicia put it, in a wedding procession; and neither the rude solitude of the forest, nor the cold of the freezing night,  
20 had any force to shadow or distract their happiness.

At length, from a rising hill, they looked below them on the dell of Holywood. The great windows of the forest abbey shone with torch and candle; its high pinnacles and spires arose very clear and  
25 silent, and the gold rood upon the topmost summit glittered brightly in the moon. All about it, in the open glade, camp-fires were burning, and the ground was thick with huts; and across the midst of the picture the frozen river curved.

## Night in the Woods

“By the mass,” said Richard, “there are Lord Foxham’s fellows still encamped. The messenger hath certainly miscarried. Well, then, so better. We have power at hand to face Sir Daniel.”

5

But if Lord Foxham’s men still lay encamped in the long holm at Holywood, it was from a different reason from the one supposed by Dick. They had marched, indeed, for Shoreby; but ere they were half-way thither, a second messenger met them, <sup>10</sup> and bade them return to their morning’s camp, to bar the road against Lancastrian fugitives, and to be so much nearer to the main army of York. For Richard of Gloucester, having finished the battle and stamped out his foes in that district, was al- <sup>15</sup> ready on the march to rejoin his brother; and not long after the return of my Lord Foxham’s retainers, Crookback himself drew rein before the abbey door. It was in honor of this august visitor that the windows shone with lights; and at the <sup>20</sup> hour of Dick’s arrival with his sweetheart and her friend, the whole ducal party was being entertained in the refectory with the splendor of that powerful and luxurious monastery.

Dick, not quite with his good will, was brought <sup>25</sup> before them. Gloucester, sick with fatigue, sat leaning upon one hand his white and terrifying

---

LINE 7. **holm**: low land near a stream. 23. **refectory**: a hall set apart for dining.

## The Black Arrow

countenance; Lord Foxham, half recovered from his wound, was in a place of honor on his left.

“How, sir?” asked Richard. “Have ye brought  
5 me Sir Daniel’s head?”

“My lord duke,” replied Dick, stoutly enough, but with a qualm at heart, “I have not even the good fortune to return with my command. I have been, so please your grace, well beaten.”

10 Gloucester looked upon him with a formidable frown.

“I gave you fifty lances, sir,” he said.

“My lord duke, I had but fifty men-at-arms,” replied the young knight.

15 “How is this?” said Gloucester. “He did ask me fifty lances.”

“May it please your grace,” replied Catesby, smoothly, “for a pursuit we gave him but the horsemen.”

20 “It is well,” replied Richard, adding, “Shelton, ye may go.”

“Stay!” said Lord Foxham. “This young man likewise had a charge from me. It may be he hath better sped. Say, Master Shelton, have ye  
25 found the maid?”

---

LINE 12. Technically, the term “lance” included a not quite certain number of foot soldiers attached to the man-at-arms.

## Night in the Woods

"I praise the saints, my lord," said Dick, "she is in this house."

"Is it even so? Well, then, my lord the duke," resumed Lord Foxham, "with your good will, to-morrow, before the army march, I do propose a marriage. This young squire ——"

"Young knight," interrupted Catesby.

"Say ye so, Sir William?" cried Lord Foxham.

"I did myself, and for good service, dub him knight," said Gloucester. "He hath twice man-<sup>10</sup> fully served me. It is not valor of hands, it is a man's mind of iron, that he lacks. He will not rise, Lord Foxham. 'Tis a fellow that will fight indeed bravely in a mellay, but hath a capon's heart. Howbeit, if he is to marry, marry him in <sup>15</sup> the name of Mary, and be done!"

"Nay, he is a brave lad — I know it," said Lord Foxham. "Content ye, then, Sir Richard. I have compounded this affair with Master Hamley, and to-morrow ye shall wed." 20

Whereupon Dick judged it prudent to withdraw; but he was not yet clear of the refectory, when a man, but newly alighted at the gate, came running four stairs at a bound, and brushing through the abbey servants, threw himself on one <sup>25</sup> knee before the duke.

"Victory, my lord," he cried.

---

LINE 14. capon's heart: a cowardly heart. 19. compounded: arranged.



## The Black Arrow

And before Dick had got to the chamber set apart for him as Lord Foxham's guest, the troops in the holm were cheering around their fires; for upon that same day, not twenty miles away, a  
5 second crushing blow had been dealt to the power of Lancaster.

## CHAPTER VII

### Dick's Revenge

THE next morning Dick was afoot before the sun, and having dressed himself to the best advantage with the aid of the Lord Foxham's baggage, and got good reports of Joan, he set forth on foot to walk away his impatience. 5

For some while he made rounds among the soldiery, who were getting to arms in the wintry twilight of the dawn and by the red glow of torches; but gradually he strolled further afield, and at length passed clean beyond the outpost, and walked alone 10 in the frozen forest, waiting for the sun.

His thoughts were both quiet and happy. His brief favor with the duke he could not find it in his heart to mourn; with Joan to wife, and my Lord Foxham for a faithful patron, he looked most 15 happily upon the future; and in the past he found but little to regret.

As he thus strolled and pondered, the solemn light of the morning grew more clear, the east was already colored by the sun, and a little scathing 20 wind blew up the frozen snow. He turned to go home; but even as he turned, his eye lit upon a figure behind a tree.

## The Black Arrow

“Stand!” he cried. “Who goes?”

The figure stepped forth and waved its hand like a dumb person. It was arrayed like a pilgrim, the hood lowered over the face, but Dick, in an instant, recognized Sir Daniel.

He strode up to him, drawing his sword; and the knight, putting his hand in his bosom, as if to seize a hidden weapon, steadfastly awaited his approach.

“Well, Dickon,” said Sir Daniel, “how is it to be? Do ye make war upon the fallen?”

“I made no war upon your life,” replied the lad; “I was your true friend until ye sought for mine; but ye have sought for it greedily.”

“Nay — self-defense,” replied the knight.  
15 “And now, boy, the news of this battle, and the presence of yon crooked devil here in mine own wood, have broken me beyond all help. I go to Holywood for sanctuary; thence overseas, with what I can carry, and to begin life again in Burgundy or France.”

20 “Ye may not go to Holywood,” said Dick.

“How! May not?” asked the knight.

“Look ye, Sir Daniel, this is my marriage morn,” said Dick; “and yon sun that is to rise will make  
25 the brightest day that ever shone for me. Your life is forfeit — doubly forfeit, for my father’s death and your own practises to me-ward. But I myself have done amiss; I have brought about men’s deaths; and upon this glad day I will be

## Dick's Revenge

neither judge nor hangman. An ye were the devil, I would not lay a hand on you. An ye were the devil, ye might go where ye will for me. Seek God's forgiveness; mine ye have freely. But to go on to Holywood is different. I carry arms for 5 York, and I will suffer no spy within their lines. Hold it, then, for certain, if ye set one foot before another, I will uplift my voice and call the nearest post to seize you."

"Ye mock me," said Sir Daniel. "I have no 10 safety out of Holywood."

"I care no more," returned Richard. "I let you go east, west, or south; north I will not. Holywood is shut against you. Go, and seek not to return. For, once ye are gone, I will warn 15 every post about this army, and there will be so shrewd a watch upon all pilgrims that, once again, were ye the very devil, ye would find it ruin to make the essay."

"Ye doom me," said Sir Daniel, gloomily. 20

"I doom you not," returned Richard. "If it so please you to set your valor against mine, come on; and though I fear it be disloyal to my party, I will take the challenge openly and fully, fight you with mine own single strength, and call for none 25 to help me. So shall I avenge my father, with a perfect conscience."

---

LINE 19. essay: attempt.



## The Black Arrow

"Ay," said Sir Daniel, "y' have a long sword against my dagger."

"I rely upon Heaven only," answered Dick, casting his sword some way behind him on the snow. "Now, if your ill fate bids you, come; and, under the pleasure of the Almighty, I make myself bold to feed your bones to foxes."

"I did but try you, Dickon," returned the knight, with an uneasy semblance of a laugh. "I would not spill your blood."

"Go then, ere it be too late," replied Shelton. "In five minutes I will call the post. I do perceive that I am too long-suffering. Had but our places been reversed, I should have been bound hand and foot some minutes past."

"Well, Dickon, I will go," replied Sir Daniel. "When we next meet, it shall repent you that ye were so harsh."

And with these words, the knight turned and began to move off under the trees. Dick watched him with strangely mingled feelings, as he went swiftly and warily, and ever and again turning a wicked eye upon the lad who had spared him, and whom he still suspected.

There was upon one side of where he went a thicket, strongly matted with green ivy, and, even in its winter state, impervious to the eye. Herein,

---

LINE 27. **impervious to the eye**: so dense that one could not see through it.

## Dick's Revenge

all of a sudden, a bow sounded like a note of music. An arrow flew, and with a great choked cry of agony and anger, the Knight of Tunstall threw up his hands and fell forward in the snow.

Dick bounded to his side and raised him. His <sup>5</sup> face desperately worked; his whole body was shaken by contorting spasms.

"Is the arrow black?" he gasped.

"It is black," replied Dick, gravely.

And then, before he could add one word, a des- <sup>10</sup>perate seizure of pain shook the wounded man from head to foot, so that his body leaped in Dick's supporting arms, and with the extremity of that pang his spirit fled in silence.

The young man laid him back gently on the snow <sup>15</sup> and prayed for that unprepared and guilty spirit, and as he prayed the sun came up at a bound, and the robins began chirping in the ivy.

When he rose to his feet, he found another man upon his knees but a few steps behind him, and, still <sup>20</sup> with uncovered head; he waited until that prayer also should be over. It took long; the man, with his head bowed and his face covered with his hands, prayed like one in a great disorder or distress of mind; and by the bow that lay beside him, Dick <sup>25</sup> judged that he was no other than the archer who had laid Sir Daniel low.

At length he also rose, and showed the countenance of Ellis Duckworth.

## The Black Arrow

“Richard,” he said, very gravely, “I heard you. Ye took the better part and pardoned; I took the worse, and there lies the clay of mine enemy. Pray for me.”

5 And he wrung him by the hand.

“Sir,” said Richard, “I will pray for you indeed; though how I may prevail I wot not. But if ye have so long pursued revenge, and find it now of such a sorry flavor, bethink ye, were it not well  
10 to pardon others? Hatch — he is dead, poor shrew! I would have spared a better; and for Sir Daniel, here lies his body. But for the priest, if I might anywise prevail, I would have you let him go.”

15 A flash came into the eyes of Ellis Duckworth.

“Nay,” he said, “the devil is still strong within me. But be at rest; the Black Arrow flieth nevermore — the fellowship is broken. They that still live shall come to their quiet and ripe end, in  
20 Heaven’s good time, for me; and for yourself, go where your better fortune calls you, and think no more of Ellis.”

## CHAPTER VIII

### Conclusion

ABOUT nine in the morning, Lord Foxham was leading his ward, once more dressed as befitted her sex, and followed by Alicia Risingham, to the church of Holywood, when Richard Crookback, his brow already heavy with cares, crossed their path and paused.

“Is this the maid?” he asked; and when Lord Foxham had replied in the affirmative, “Minion,” he added, “hold up your face until I see its favor.”

He looked upon her sourly for a little. 10

“Ye are fair,” he said at last, “and; as they tell me, dowered. How if I offered you a brave marriage, as became your face and parentage?”

“My lord duke,” replied Joanna, “may it please your grace, I had rather wed with Sir Richard.” 15

“How so?” he asked, harshly. “Marry but the man I name to you, and he shall be my lord, and you my lady, before night. For Sir Richard, let me tell you plainly, he will die Sir Richard.”

“I ask no more of Heaven, my lord, than but to die Sir Richard’s wife,” returned Joanna. 20

“Look ye at that, my lord,” said Gloucester,

---

LINE 8. **Minion**: mistress.



## The Black Arrow

turning to Lord Foxham. "Here be a pair for you. The lad, when for good services I gave him his choice of my favor, chose but the grace of an old, drunken shipman. I did warn him freely, but he  
5 was stout in his besottedness. 'Here dieth your favor,' said I; and he, my lord, with a most assured impertinence, 'Mine be the loss,' quoth he. It shall be so, by the rood!"

"Said he so?" cried Alicia. "Then well said,  
10 lion-driver!"

"Who is this?" asked the duke.

"A prisoner of Sir Richard's," answered Lord Foxham, "Mistress Alicia Risingham."

"See that she be married to a sure man," said  
15 the duke.

"I had thought of my kinsman, Hamley, an it like your grace," returned Lord Foxham. "He hath well served the cause."

"It likes me well," said Richard. "Let them be  
20 wedded speedily. Say, fair maid, will you wed?"

"My lord duke," said Alicia, "so as the man is straight ——" And there, in a perfect consternation, the voice died on her tongue.

"He is straight, my mistress," replied Richard,  
25 calmly. "I am the only crookback of my party; we are else passably well shapen. Ladies, and you, my lord," he added, with a sudden change to grave

---

LINE 5. **besottedness**: foolishness.

## Conclusion

courtesy, "judge me not too churlish if I leave you. A captain, in the time of war, hath not the ordering of his hours."

And with a very handsome salutation he passed on, followed by his officers. 5

"Alack," cried Alicia, "I am shent!"

"Ye know him not," replied Lord Foxham. "It is but a trifle; he hath already clean forgot your words."

"He is, then, the very flower of knighthood," said 10 Alicia.

"Nay, he but mindeth other things," returned Lord Foxham. "Tarry we no more."

In the chancel they found Dick waiting, attended by a few young men; and there were he and Joan 15 united. When they came forth again, happy and yet serious, into the frosty air and sunlight, the long files of the army were already winding forward up the road; already the Duke of Gloucester's banner was unfolded and began to move from be- 20 fore the abbey in a clump of spears; and behind it, girt by steel-clad knights, the bold, black-hearted, and ambitious hunchback moved on towards his brief kingdom and his lasting infamy. But the wedding party turned upon the other side, and sat 25 down, with sober merriment, to breakfast. The father cellarer attended on their wants, and sat

---

LINE 22. *girt*: surrounded. 27. *cellarer*: the keeper of provisions.

## The Black Arrow

with them at table. Hamley, all jealousy forgotten, began to ply the nowise loth Alicia with courtship. And there, amid the sounding of tuckets and the clash of armored soldiery and horses continually moving forth, Dick and Joan sat side by side, tenderly held hands, and looked, with ever-growing affection, in each other's eyes.

Thenceforth the dust and blood of that unruly epoch passed them by. They dwelt apart from 10 alarms in the green forest where their love began.

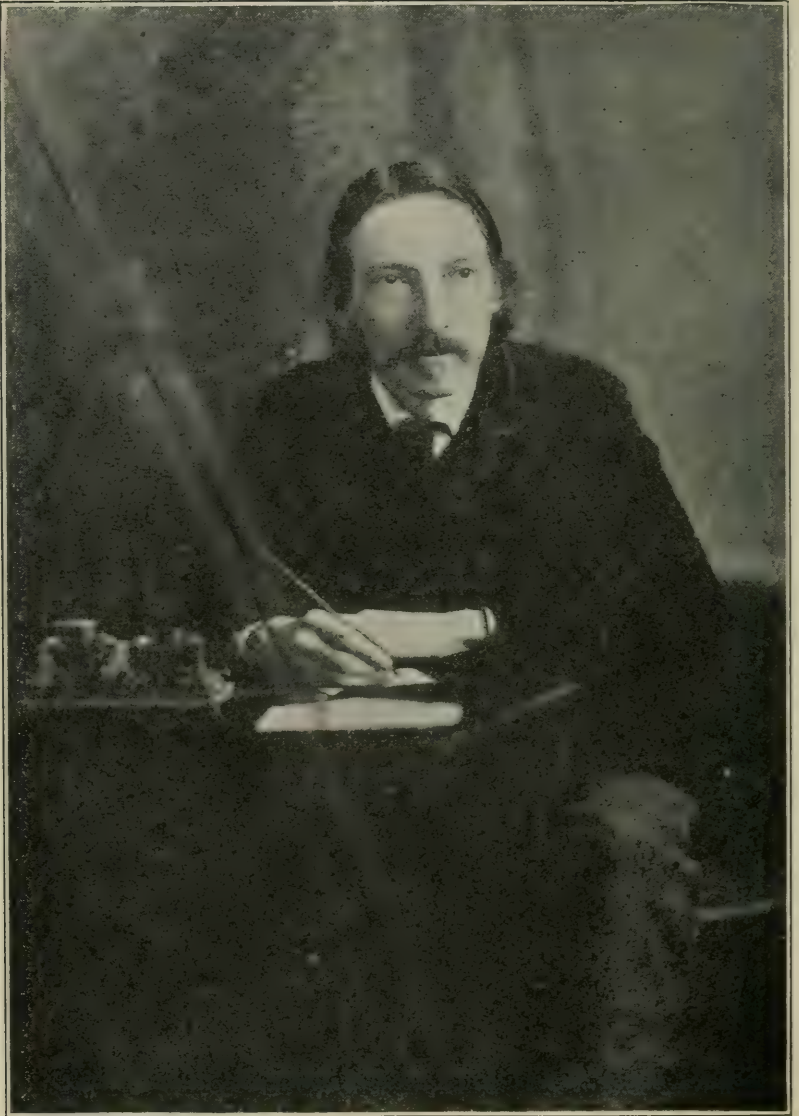
Two old men in the meanwhile enjoyed pensions in great prosperity and peace, and with perhaps a superfluity of ale and wine, in Tunstall hamlet. One had been all his life a shipman, and continued 15 to the last to lament his man Tom. The other, who had been a bit of everything, turned in the end towards piety, and made a most religious death under the name of Brother Honestus in the neighboring abbey. So Lawless had his will, and died 20 a friar.

---

LINE 13. **superfluity**: overabundance.







ROBERT LOUIS STEVENSON

## APPENDIX

### ROBERT LOUIS STEVENSON

WHAT girl or boy needs an introduction to Robert Louis Stevenson, the author of *Treasure Island*? To write of romantic adventure is one thing and to live such a life is another. Stevenson longed for a life of action, and this was denied him, but his life was not without adventure, not without daring, and not without romance. It was not the ordinary sort of daring that the world is quick to note and reward, but the more difficult daring of the spirit that brings no spurs and no knighthood. A lively imagination colored his world with romance. His unflinching battle against ill health testified to his courage. A high-spirited outlook on life made of each experience an adventure. He wove the steadfast badge of courage into the pattern of his life, and made of himself a man, true, great-hearted, not-to-be-forgotten.

Robert Louis Balfour Stevenson was born in Edinburgh, Scotland, on November 13, 1850. In his veins coursed the blood of a father whose inventions made safe the deep-sea lights of the Scottish coast. He was cared for by a mother whose undaunted spirit refused to accept any but a cheerful outlook on life. He was influenced by Robert Stevenson, his grandfather, a man of remarkable ability.

## Appendix

Well trained as an engineer, Robert Stevenson had built many lighthouses. The best known of these is Bell Rock Lighthouse, which, after one hundred years of service, still guides sailors past a treacherous and rugged coast. The life of an engineer in 1811, when Bell Rock first shone, was hazardous in the extreme and well suited to this hardy Scotchman. The picturesque and romantic elements of such a life appealed to him, and its mental energy and danger added zest to his labors. His genius for construction was inherited by his son. Thomas Stevenson, Louis' father, helped construct the Skerryvore, one of the most famous deep-sea lights on the west coast of Scotland. It was he also who perfected the revolving light that is now so commonly used.

Louis, then, owed much to a father whose nature was a strange mixture of sternness, humor, and spirited imagination; to a mother whose vivacious and hospitable spirit won the love of many; and to a grandfather who was a leader among the men of the "Northern Lights." It was Robert Stevenson's delight in the beautiful that was voiced later by Stevenson, who said that he loved "to see the lighthouses open in the hour of dusk their flower of fire, and the topaz and ruby interchange on the summit of Bell Rock."

Edinburgh is in many ways a city of romance, but because of its climate, it was not the best place in the world for Louis to spend his childhood. His health was delicate and many winters he barely crossed the threshold of his own home. In spite of this, he seemed always busy with games of his own invention. He







EDINBURGH CASTLE

## Robert Louis Stevenson

lived in a world of his own, in which "he mounted a horse, handled a ship, or slew a dragon in his imagination." He was devoted to his mother. She it was who encouraged his love for reading and story-making.

Alison Cunningham, or "Cummie" as she was called, nursed Louis through long sieges of illness. She cared for him during all of his childhood, and became almost a second mother to him. Mrs. Stevenson was ill during much of Louis' childhood; so he became the more dependent on Cummie. He never forgot her goodness and many years later dedicated *A Child's Garden of Verses* to her.

Before Louis could write, he made up verses and stories and Cummie wrote them down for him. He never tired of covering the pages of books he especially loved with crayon or water color pictures. Though many of them were crude, they showed the beginning of an artistic trend that remained with him through life. When he was in bed, Louis often amused himself by humming rambling songs that he called "songstries" or waited, so he said, for the brownies to bring him stories.

An uncle offered a prize to the nephew or niece who could write the best history of Moses. Louis won the prize, and, although he was only six years old, decided then and there to become a writer of stories. This was a resolve that he never forgot during his boyhood or the days of his young manhood, when his family entertained high hopes of his becoming a lighthouse engineer.

Reverend Lewis Balfour, Louis' maternal grandfather, lived at Colinton, near Edinburgh, in a fine old

## Appendix

Scotch home called Colinton Manse. It was here that Louis spent the happiest days of his childhood. Here he romped with his cousins and enjoyed the normal pleasures of a boy with other boys. Never robust, he was still a boon companion, and a great favorite with his cousins. They went on picnics, and searched for "spunkies," or ghosts, in the graveyard near their home. They planned all manner of adventuring, in which Louis was without doubt the master mind. Colinton was an enchanted spot to Louis and he later said that the story of his life at Colinton and at Edinburgh seemed like the stories of two different people.

These days show us the picture of a boy of whimsical imagination, of cheerfulness, and of enthusiasm for fun and adventure. From the little boy who could say, "The world is so great and I am so small, I do not like it at all, at all," he developed into a lad of brave, high spirits and of eager mind.

Louis' school life began in 1859, but it was often interrupted. Poor health and travel caused him to change schools, or to stop school entirely. One of his teachers spoke of him as "full of fun, ready for his lessons, ready for a story." Another said, "He was the most intelligent and best informed boy in my experience." Louis did well in the subjects he enjoyed, especially Latin, French, and mathematics, but was an indifferent student in those for which he had little interest.

He liked to read and re-read certain books, "conjured up their scenes and delighted to hear them rehearsed to seventy times seven." He was the leader of

## Robert Louis Stevenson

a group of classmates. One of them later described him as "a slender, long-legged boy, with an indescribable influence that forced us to include him in our play as a looker on, critic, and slave driver." He was forever spinning tales for his school chums, starting magazines, and writing stories. *The School Boy Magazine* was one of his school ventures and one of his tales was called *The Ghost Story*. Like many of his others, he called it "a perfect crawler." He circulated his magazine for a penny a reading. He did not seem to care much for school games, but he did like to swim, row, and fish, and in the wintertime he enjoyed skating.

Louis never forgot a trip he made with his father while he inspected the harbor lights along the coast of Fife. Later, his joy in travel was more than satisfied, for the family visited the English lakes, France, Italy, and Switzerland. Louis and his mother spent several months at Mentone, in the south of France.

When they returned to Edinburgh to stay, it was necessary for Louis to decide upon a career. Days of unhappiness followed, while he struggled with his ambition to become a writer and his desire to follow the wishes of his father. The latter expected him to be the sixth Stevenson to hold a place on the Board of Northern Lights. The result was that Louis spent three and one-half years studying science at the University of Edinburgh.

Louis' university record was very poor. Though he proved such an indifferent scholar, he never weakened in his determination to become an author and experimented with writing at every odd moment.



## Appendix

He felt miserable and lonely, for he loved his father and dreaded to confess failure in his studies at the University. This state of affairs could not last long, and Mr. Stevenson finally discovered the low grades. Father and son then came to an understanding in which it was agreed that Louis must study law. Mr. Stevenson had little sympathy with Louis' desire to write and insisted that he follow a profession. Louis himself never doubted his ability to become an author some day. He felt strongly that "what a man truly wants, that will he get," and future events proved that he was right.

It was in 1871 that Louis gave up all thoughts of engineering. The days of misunderstanding at home, however, were not at an end. Louis dressed to please himself, and the manner of it was sometimes eccentric. He had been brought up in a genuinely religious household, and he was now forming independent religious opinions. He was so lax in certain duties, that his father called him an idler; but he was always about his "business of learning to write." He kept two books in his pocket, one to read and one to write in. "Thus," he said, "I lived with words."

Robert Alan Stevenson, Louis' favorite cousin, returned to Edinburgh at about this time. These two had many tastes in common and were sympathetic companions. Robert's arrival did much to end the period of "greensickness" through which Louis said he was passing. He wrote, "I was done with the sullens for good, as soon as I had got a friend to laugh with."

Louis made many other friends at this time. One

## Robert Louis Stevenson

of them was Sir Walter Simpson, with whom he made an inland voyage in a canoe into parts of Belgium and France. Another friend, after their first meeting, described him as "a slender lad, with great dark eyes and a brilliant smile."

Louis' law course was interrupted by a period of ill health, but, in 1875, he passed his examinations and was admitted to the Scottish bar. He practiced law but a short time, and then made the final decision to devote all of his time to writing. Louis spoke of himself at this time as passing from streaks of laziness to striving and persevering. "I came about," he said, "like a well-handled ship. There stood at the wheel that unknown steersman whom we call God."

His first essays were published in the *Cornhill Magazine* and *The Portfolio* under the initials R. L. S. He was affectionately called R. L. S. by some of his friends, and he is often so spoken of to-day.

In 1876, Louis met in France an American woman, Mrs. Osbourne, whose tastes were in many respects similar to his own. She proved a true friend. Accompanied by her son and daughter, she was spending some months at Grez in the study of art. Her friendship was of more than ordinary consequence in Louis' life, and it later led to their marriage.

*A Lodging for the Night*, *Will o' the Mill*, and *New Arabian Nights* were Stevenson's first short stories. The people of his own city and country, with the exception of the critics, were very slow in appreciating his work. This may have been one reason why he was happiest when visiting in London. Here he made many

## Appendix

friends; among them Sidney Colvin, whose friendship he treasured throughout his entire life.

He was long remembered at the Savile Club in London for his charm and versatility. His laughter-loving moods were the delight of his friends. He was "gay, eloquent, boyish." Whatever might have been his troubles, London knew nothing of them.

From the time when he was a boy and liked to climb a tree, to see the world beyond his garden wall, Stevenson had longed to travel. He wanted to see new sights and people, and, whenever he could, made short trips to the Continent. He especially enjoyed staying in Paris with his cousin, Robert Stevenson. When his mother complained of his absence, he wrote her, "I must be a bit of a vagabond." And though he promised that in time he would stop his wanderings, his restless spirit urged him to undertake, in 1879, an arduous journey to California.

Many were the hardships that Stevenson endured on this trip. From New York, he took an emigrant train bound for California. It is difficult for us to imagine the discomforts he was forced to endure. His health suffered from exposure and lack of good food, but his spirits remained unshaken. The training he had given himself to endure discomfort and pain did not now forsake him, and he wrote to Sidney Colvin, "I will not say die, and I do not fear man nor fortune."

He compared his lot with the hardships of the early emigrants, and he felt fortunate to escape their fate. He lessened the fatigue of his journey by imagining the early days of the Indian and trapper. He had little to

## Robert Louis Stevenson

say for the appearance of the country. "My journey," he wrote home, "is through ghostly deserts, sage brush and alkali, and rocks without form or color."

After reaching California, Stevenson became very ill. When he had recovered sufficiently to travel, he went to Monterey, then a small Mexican village. Here he wrote *The Amateur Emigrant* and *Across the Plains*.

He decided to move on to San Francisco. His funds were running low, letters from home went astray, and he was unspeakably lonely. He managed to live first for seventy, then forty-five cents a day. How long he could have continued to do this, we do not know. His landlady's little boy fell ill, and, having a great love and sympathy for children, Stevenson nursed him back to health. The strain proved too much for him, and for six weeks he lingered between life and death.

Then came anxious letters from home. An income of two hundred and fifty pounds a year was promised him by his father, who said he never again wanted his son to deny himself the ordinary necessities of life. This seemed to turn the tide of misfortune for Stevenson, and he took new courage in living. When he recovered from his illness, he worked hard to make his family proud of him.

In 1880, he met Mrs. Osbourne, whose home was in California. Shortly afterwards, they were married. Stevenson could not again complain of being lonely, for his wife became "a staunch companion of all his adventures." For some time, he had longed to return to his native land, and he now took his wife and her son Lloyd, back to Scotland.



## Appendix

The man whose love for the place where he was born could make him write, "When I forget thee, Auld Reekie, may my right hand forget its cunning," would now have liked nothing better than to live in Scotland. Unhappily, his health forbade this. Having inherited a weakness of the chest, he was in no condition to brave the rigorous climate of Edinburgh.

He sought health in Switzerland, England, and France, and lived from day to day with the best that was in him. "Courage," he said, "has interested me more than anything else." He was once asked why he did not write more love stories, or at least put more women characters into his books. To this, he replied that his heart was ever stirred by the acts of bravery performed by soldiers and daring seamen, and that he "always admired great strength, even in a pirate."

Stevenson and Lloyd spent hours playing war with lead soldiers, and covering an attic floor with carefully chalked campaign maps. Stevenson had never forgotten his own boyhood, in fact he had himself "never wholly ceased to be a boy." He wrote *Treasure Island* to please Lloyd, who said he wanted "something interesting," and ordered that there be no women in it.

*Treasure Island* was read aloud to the Stevenson family, as it was being written. Every one was much excited over it, especially Stevenson's father, who named Flint's ship, and made an inventory of Billy Bones' chest. "*Treasure Island*, by Captain George North" was first printed in serial form in a magazine called *Young Folks*. Two years later, it was printed as

## Robert Louis Stevenson

a book and was so popular with young and old alike that it was translated into many languages.

Stevenson started *The Black Arrow* in 1883, while living at Hyères on the Riviera. His home was called the *Chalet de la solitude*. It nestled on a hill overlooking the town and had "a garden like a fairy story and a view like a classical landscape." *The Black Arrow* was published as a serial in *Young Folks* under the signature of Captain George North. It was so popular that it raised the circulation of the paper by many hundreds of copies a week during its appearance. Five years later, it was printed as a book.

Thomas Stevenson bought a house at Bournemouth, England, as a present for his daughter-in-law. The house was named "Skerryvore" and here for three years the entire Stevenson family lived in happy reunion. It was a joy to Stevenson to feel his father's renewed sympathy and understanding. Much as he had disapproved of his son's early desire to write, Thomas Stevenson was now quick to acknowledge his ability and was very proud of him.

The years at Skerryvore were all too short. In 1887, Thomas Stevenson died. The bereaved family, hoping to improve Stevenson's health, decided to revisit America.

At Skerryvore, Stevenson wrote *Kidnapped*, *The Strange Case of Dr. Jekyll and Mr. Hyde*, and *A Child's Garden of Verses*. He was fast becoming famous at home and abroad.

Surely in those evenings when he read his stories to the members of his family, they must have guessed his

## Appendix

genius long before the world knew of it. It is pleasant to think of that interested group listening to the sympathetic voice, rich with its Scotch accent, re-creating the characters that now are known and loved by all the world. Stevenson possessed a strong sense of the dramatic, and must often have read with fiery intensity. His eyes, the most striking feature of his face, deep brown and wide apart, must have shone with the spirit of his story. If he was later to be known as the writer who "made lovers of his readers," he must certainly have moved the heartstrings of those happy listeners with the humor and pathos of his work.

His fame was well deserved, for never has there been an author who worked harder to learn his trade; who was so particular with form and style; who made more "delicate inlay-work in black and white." His was a many-sided mind. It is hard to realize that the field of his art included the writing of novels, short stories, essays, history, biography, fables, poems, plays, books of travel, prayers, and sermons.

Stevenson's second visit to America was far different from his first. He was accompanied by his wife, his mother, and Lloyd. In New York, he was acclaimed by the many who were reading and appreciating his books. After a winter in the Adirondacks, where he started writing *The Master of Ballantrae*, he and his family went to San Francisco. As soon as they reached the coast, their thoughts turned toward the South Sea Islands, and they procured a schooner-yacht, the *Casco*, in which they set sail for the islands of the Pacific.

Stevenson loved the life aboard the *Casco* and grew

## Robert Louis Stevenson

strong in the warm ocean air. Always keen and accurate in observation, he watched with delight the changing sea and sky. He made much of little points of observation that for others would have gone unheeded. Even the passing of a day was not commonplace :

“ Brief day and bright day  
And sunset red,  
Early in the evening,  
The stars are overhead.”

Thus he marked the beauty of nature and gloried in the accustomed passing of the hours.

After twenty-two days, Nukahiva, one of the Marquesan Islands, was sighted. Here Stevenson spent six happy weeks, charmed with the novel life of the island. He and his family lived ashore and soon made friends with the natives, who brought them presents of fruit, baskets, mats, and fans. Stevenson's health steadily improved, benefited by the daily sea bathing and long walks on the beach.

All the islanders, regardless of their rank, were kindly treated by Stevenson. He refused to call the natives savages. He seemed to understand them because of the stories his grandfather had told him about the wild Scottish Islands, where many customs were the same as here. An Englishman who lived in the South Seas at the time of his visit, said of him, “His inborn courtesy, more than any of his other good traits, endeared him to his fellows in the Pacific.”

The *Casco* next sailed to Tahiti, one of the Society Islands. The trip was very stormy and dangerous and Stevenson contracted a severe cold. His condi-



## Appendix

tion grew so serious that the family left the boat and drove hurriedly to Tautira, the largest village. Here they were hospitably received. Moe, the princess of the island, offered them her house, then occupied by Ori, her sub-chief and relative. Ori gladly relinquished



IN THE SOUTH SEAS

his home, and Stevenson was grateful for this shelter in which to regain his health.

Stevenson and Ori later became close friends and Stevenson was adopted into Ori's clan and became his brother. When, five weeks later, Stevenson left for Honolulu, all the inhabitants of Tautira came to bid him farewell. Ori was heartbroken over his departure and wrote him as true a letter of parting as ever one man has written to another.

## Robert Louis Stevenson

Stevenson was entertained in Honolulu by Mrs. Strong, his stepdaughter, and her family. Kalakaua, the last of the Hawaiian kings, invited him to his palace, and related to him the legends of the South Seas. Stevenson wrote home, "I have had more fun and pleasure of my life these past months than ever before, and more health than any time in ten long years."

From Honolulu, he chartered the trading schooner *Equator*, for a trip to the Marshall, Gilbert, and Samoan Islands. He loved "the sunshine, thrilling sea-side air, the wash of the waves on the sea face." Without doubt, he had inherited from his grandfather the taste for island adventuring.

Little did he suspect that he was destined never to leave the Samoan Islands. His health was so much better in the Pacific that he bought four hundred acres of land in the hills near Apia, the capital of the islands. Because there were five streams running through these hills, he called his new home Vailima, which in Samoan means "Five Waters."

Stevenson threw himself heart and soul into the happy business of home building. His life-long habit had been to spend all of his energy on the affairs that absorbed his interest, and the building of Vailima was no exception. It was a novel and exciting adventure, and for the time being, at least, overshadowed his writing. The result was that Vailima grew to be a comfortable and beautiful home. Its chief attraction was its spacious hall, or living-room, which Stevenson filled with heirlooms and treasures that had been sent from Skerryvore. The house stood quite by itself, and only

## Appendix

pathways led to it, because of the surrounding dense and tropical growth.

The servants at Vailima were all natives and Stevenson governed them somewhat according to the old Scotch clan system, which made the entire household like a family. On Sunday evenings, a Samoan service was held and a prayer given that had been written in



VAILIMA

English by Stevenson. The little clan was ruled justly and wisely and all were devoted to their master.

Stevenson had the gift of making friends wherever he lived, and he was soon greatly beloved by the Samoans. They appreciated his open-mindedness, his intense feeling of justice, and hatred of cruelty and dishonesty.



## Robert Louis Stevenson

He was sincere and unswerving in his convictions, and he would not tolerate oppression.

The Samoan Islands were governed by England, Germany, and the United States. There was constant trouble among officials, and outbreaks among the natives. Stevenson sympathized ardently with the Samoans and did everything in his power to help them.



IN SAMOA

This naturally led to strained relations between him and certain officials. These misunderstandings were not lasting or serious, and, for the most part, the officers were friendly. "He was consulted," said Lloyd Osbourne, "on every imaginable subject." All ranks and degrees of men went to him and he never failed to meet and hear them all.



## Appendix

He aided a party of chieftains in prison, and they later showed their gratefulness by clearing and digging a beautiful road leading to Vailima. It was a difficult endeavor because of the dense undergrowth, but they gladly bore all of the labor and expense. They called their work Ala Loto Alofa, the Road of the Loving Hearts.

The Samoans knew that Stevenson was a great writer ; so they named him Tusitala, the Teller-of-Tales. It was common to hear them say, "Once Tusitala's friend, always Tusitala's friend."

For the most part, Stevenson felt much better in the South Seas, yet there were times when his illness returned. He never complained at these times, but wrote unflinchingly through pain and suffering.

Much as he cared for his new home, his absence from Scotland made his native land the more dear. At times he keenly felt his exile from his "ain countree." He spent many hours weaving the Samoan legends into stories, but he liked most of all to write of his own land and his own people. He filled *St. Ives* with scenes surrounding Edinburgh Castle and the Pentland Hills that he longed to see. He wrote further adventures of David Balfour and Alan Breck, under the title of *David Balfour*. Most of his writing now was done by dictation to Mrs. Strong, his stepdaughter, who, with her son, had come to live at Vailima.

Always hospitable, Stevenson made his home the center of many happy times. Four years after settling in Vailima, he celebrated his forty-fourth birthday, and gave a Thanksgiving dinner to his American friends.

## Robert Louis Stevenson

Soon after this, at the end of a busy day, the beloved Teller-of-Tales ceased suddenly from his labors. While talking with his wife on the veranda of Vailima, he became aware of a strange sensation in his head, and pressing both hands to his temples, lapsed suddenly into unconsciousness. Several hours later, he died in the great hall filled with his treasures from far-off Scotland. He was surrounded by his family and the few Samoans who formed the clan of which he was chief. After a life of struggle, the end had come quickly and peacefully. The great heart, that was a friend to all, lay finally at rest.



STEVENSON IN SAMOA

The Union Jack was placed over Stevenson's body, as he lay in the hall at Vailima. In silence, the Samoans who loved him passed by his bed, knelt and kissed his hand, and spent the long night watch with him.

Only those who knew and mourned him were allowed to take part in the last rites. A path was cut to the summit of Vaea Mountain, and the grave dug there where it was his wish that he should lie. Loving hands bore him up the steep mountain-side, and here the last solemn service was held. During the service, a prayer

was given that Stevenson had written and read to his family the evening before his death. It was the prayer so widely known, beseeching God to "call us up with morning faces and with morning hearts — eager to labor — eager to be happy —"



*By Burton Holmes from Ewing Galloway*

THE TOMB OF STEVENSON AND HIS WIFE IN SAMOA

Samoan chiefs have forbidden the use of firearms upon the picturesque slopes of Vaea, "that the birds may live there undisturbed, and raise above his grave the songs he loved so well."

Inscribed in the gray stone that marks his grave are the verses that he had written :



## Historical Setting

1850

ROBERT LOUIS  
STEVENSON

1894

Under the wide and starry sky,  
Dig the grave and let me lie,  
Glad did I live and gladly die,  
And I laid me down with a will.

This be the verse you grave for me:  
Here he lies where he longed to be;  
Home is the sailor, home from the sea,  
And the hunter home from the hill.

### HISTORICAL SETTING OF *THE BLACK ARROW*

The scenes of *The Black Arrow* are laid in Merry England, though England was not at that time so merry, unless we could say that fighting made her so. She was in the midst of that long and tiresome conflict known as the War of the Roses.

It is easy to see the reason for taking up arms against invasion by another country, but it must be hard indeed to take up arms against brother and neighbor and wage destructive warfare within the borders of one's own fair land. This is just what happened in the days of *The Black Arrow*. Much better had it been a war of roses than the war that it was, which, despite its pretty title, made use of arrows and deadly steel and left death and ruin in its wake.

King Henry VI, who ruled England when this unfortunate war broke out, was of the House of Lancaster. He did not have so clear a title to the throne as had his kinsman Richard, Duke of York. His grandfather, Henry IV, had ignored the just claim of the boy prince, Edmund Mortimer, and had appealed to



## Appendix

Parliament to proclaim him king. Parliament enjoyed more power in England at this time than ever before, and more power than it had again for many years. It happened that England had just experienced trouble-



HENRY VI OF ENGLAND

some days with a boy king; so she now set aside the claim of the nearest heir to the throne, and accepted Henry.

Parliament might thus make a king, but could not insure his safety or happiness. Henry IV was worried with rebellions and disheartened with plots. Shake-

speare could truthfully make him say, "Uneasy lies the head that wears a crown."

His son, Henry V, was a born warrior, perhaps a good thing. Warfare in this grim age was considered "the highest and noblest work of kings." He straightway made his subjects forget their troubles at home by renewing an ancient quarrel with France. He regained territory that he considered rightfully his, and made himself supreme in France. He had won a bride, a fortune, and the French crown, but he had exhausted England and laid the foundation for the downfall of the House of Lancaster. All the land he had conquered was destined to be lost.

## Historical Setting

At his death, in 1422, his young son Henry VI was proclaimed King of England and France. Until he became of age, his two uncles carried on the affairs of the government at home and abroad.

A peasant girl was now to save France from the confusion into which it had fallen. In 1429, Joan of Arc came to the aid of her country, led the French troops to victory, and caused her king to be crowned in Rheims Cathedral. The story of her betrayal and martyrdom remains for all time one of the saddest pages in history.

We must now return to Henry VI, whose uncertain throne totters and falls during the stirring events of *The Black Arrow*. Henry VI proved to be a mere "shadow of a king," weak physically and at times mentally unsound. He had married a French wife, Margaret of Anjou, who was dauntless and brave and ruled the kingdom when her husband failed. Yet she became known to history as "the queen of tears"; even queens have their troubles.

If fate had placed Henry in more peaceful times, he might have ruled his people. As it was, he could not cope with the disorders of his country. He was well educated, merciful, and pious, and was loved by many of



JOAN OF ARC

## Appendix

his subjects, but he was entirely unable to handle the business of being a king in wartime.

The English government was very poor, and the royal household was often well-nigh reduced to poverty. In contrast to this, there were many great English lords who had gained fortunes in the French wars and who now lived in kingly splendor. The Earl of Warwick alone had many castles and some 30,000 men at his command. These powerful barons were constantly quarreling with one another and the time was ripe for the outbreak of civil strife between them.

The weak King Henry VI sat upon the throne, while Richard, Duke of York, an able man and descendant of Edmund Mortimer, was, as many believed, unjustly denied the crown. This was pretext enough for the beginning of hostilities between the two royal houses.

The truth of the matter was that the powerful nobles who had plundered a foreign country now wanted an excuse to plunder one another. The House of Lancaster chose for its symbol a red rose, and the House of York a white rose. Thus the War of the Roses commenced and for thirty years drenched the good soil of England with the blood of men who deserved to die for a better cause.

Eastern England championed Richard, and Western England fought for the king, and some there were who, like Sir Daniel in *The Black Arrow*, found it to their advantage to change their allegiance a surprising number of times.

Queen Margaret was determined to clear the way for the succession of her son to the throne. Dominated by

## Historical Setting

her stubborn will, armies were gathered and many fierce battles were fought. At last, in the battle of Wakefield, Richard was slain.

In spite of this, the House of Lancaster could not long enjoy the fruits of victory, for within a year their forces were overwhelmingly defeated.

The eldest son of Richard came to the throne under the title of Edward IV. Queen Margaret and her son fled to Scotland and the king was taken prisoner and thrown into the Tower of London. He was rescued by the Earl of Warwick, but was soon imprisoned again and died one of those "conveniently sudden deaths" so common at the time.

Queen Margaret rallied her followers once more, but her army was overwhelmingly defeated at Tewkesbury in 1471, and her son was killed. She then returned to her native Anjou and died, so they say, of a broken heart.

Upon Edward's death, England was again confronted with a boy ruler. His uncle Richard, Duke of Gloucester, was made his guardian. History cannot point to a more cruel or unscrupulous man than this same Duke of Gloucester. He it is who took a liking to the young hero of *The Black Arrow*, though as Stevenson points out, he enters into the story at an earlier date than the events of history justify.

Richard proved a treacherous guardian, for he caused the young prince and his brother to be murdered, and seized the throne for himself. By force and violence, the standard of the White Rose was maintained. Yet it was not long to go unchallenged.



## Appendix

Henry Tudor, known also as Henry of Lancaster, had been in exile, and he now took advantage of Richard's unpopular reign to return to England.

He gathered, in 1485, a great force of men and fought the battle of Bosworth Field. The House of York was utterly defeated and Richard was slain. This marked the decisive struggle between the great families of York and Lancaster. Whatever may be said of Richard of Gloucester, and he is well described by Stevenson, he was as brave as he was evil and he fought until the hour of his death with unflinching courage.

Wearing the crown that Richard had lost, Henry assumed the title of Henry VII of England. He had promised his followers that he would marry Elizabeth, sister of the young princes who were murdered. This he did, and in so doing united the rival houses of Lancaster and York. In token of this union, the red and white roses were caused to be joined in the stained glass of the beautiful east window of Henry VII's chapel at Westminster Abbey.

It would have been well for England if her troubles could have so easily ended. But it needed more than a royal marriage to heal the scars of thirty years of bloodshed. Half of England's nobility was slain; the flower of her finest youth had given its life for the cause of the Roses. Notwithstanding this gloomy outlook on the future, Bosworth Field was a turning point in English history and with it came new and better days for England.

## Social Background

### SOCIAL BACKGROUND OF *THE BLACK ARROW*

It is difficult for us to imagine ourselves living in the fifteenth century, when thoughts of warfare began and ended the day; when Richard Shelton, the hero of *The Black Arrow* placed next to swimming, in his catalogue of manly accomplishments, the killing of a man in single fight. It is true that there are few boys whose blood would not tingle at the thought of the hazards that Dick encountered. Yet these same boys to-day are beginning to realize that the glories and bravery of peace are preferable to those of battle. This was a lesson that Dick had also to learn; impulsive and daring, his stout heart grew sick of fighting, and he turned gladly to the more enduring happiness of peace.



A CROSSBOWMAN

It is hard for a girl to imagine the condition of the world in which Joanna lived, Dick's staunch companion, whose marriage was planned and sold when she was a baby, causing intrigue upon intrigue to weave itself around her. A fragile flower could not have been more carefully guarded than she. What an irksome state of affairs this must have been for a girl of spirit, as Joanna most certainly was! What a dreary, colorless life those girls of the fifteenth century must have

## Appendix

lived, a life uneventful save for parting with loved ones off to the wars!

Warfare in those days was not what it is to-day. The army was made up of cavalry, or knights, and foot-soldiers. The lance and double-edged sword were the



CROSSBOWMEN

time-honored weapons of the knights, while the foot-soldiers fought with longbows. The yeomen, or country people, were skilled in the use of the longbow, which was made of yew-tree wood, and was the height of the user. Only the best armor was proof against the fierce arrows that it shot.

## Social Background

Small cannon were first used in 1346, though gunpowder was known to the English a hundred years before. They made use of cannon in various of the French Wars to frighten the French cavalry horses. Little did they dream that during the next two centuries the use of gunpowder would revolutionize warfare and make the steel-clad knight a thing of the past. As Carlyle puts it, "gunpowder made all men of the same height," for a yeoman could use it as well as a lord and became as dangerous a foe.

A few awkward hand-guns were used in the warfare of this period, but they were very rudimentary and had to be fired with a match. Firearms had not yet taken the place of the old English weapons, among which were the spear, javelin, battle-axe, and sword.

The helmets of the warriors were closed; so it was customary for each knight to wear a crest. This served to distinguish him from his fellows and showed at a glance the side for which he was fighting. The armor of the knights was of steel plate, which entirely covered the body. It was richly decorated, but was so heavy that an unhorsed knight was often unable to rise without help. He was sometimes smothered by the weight of his own coat of mail.

Knights and yeomen differed greatly in their social status and manner of living. The difference between them cannot be understood without some knowledge of the system known as feudalism. Feudalism was a provision for land ownership, that allowed a great lord to divide and sub-rent his land to tenants, who promised allegiance to him, paid him certain taxes, and stood



## Appendix

ready to fight for him and for the king. The feudal lord, in turn, promised his tenants protection. All land had first been granted the nobles by the king, with the understanding that they pay him certain obligations in the form of taxes and service. The great landholders, therefore, rented their estates to tenants on nearly the same terms as those by which they held their own. Since the king held all of the land directly or indirectly, he had the right to call upon vast feudal troops from the great estates.

The over-lord also had certain privileges. He might act as guardian and collect the revenues of an estate, while the heir was under age. When the young lord became of age, he was forced to pay his guardian a fine, known as a relief. The lord might decide whom an orphan heiress should marry, and demand payment for allowing her to choose her husband. These are only a few of the many privileges an over-lord enjoyed. Feudalism, as may readily be seen, placed great power in the hands of the nobles, and for a time at least made them more powerful than the king himself.

The lowest class of tenants was composed of villeins, or serfs. They were not called upon to give military service, but were bound to the land they worked, and could be sold with it. The inhabitants, then, of a manor, or the estate of a lord, were the lord and his followers, including a parish priest; the free tenants, who paid a fixed rent for their land; and the villeins, who could not leave the manor, and paid for the rent of their land in labor or produce.

Next to the manor house, the most important build-

## Social Background

ing was the church. The lord's mill was also of great importance, for it was here that the tenants were compelled to grind their grain and pay for the grinding. The tenants' cottages were gathered in a village near the mill.

The lord's land was composed of private grounds, and of a section divided into strips that were cultivated by the tenants. There were also a common pasture and a waste and forest woodland that might be used by all. If the village grew into a manufacturing or trading town, the tenants might buy the right to manage their own affairs. In this way, they could establish a free town.

This was the condition of affairs in England in the eleventh and twelfth centuries, and it explains the status of the knight and the man of the common people. While feudalism lost its power during the War of the Roses, it continued to retain its titles, privileges, and social distinction. In these early days, the knight was given his nobility because of the property that he owned, while in more modern times nobility is granted because of service rendered to king and country. The free tenant or yeoman developed into the sturdy English middle class. The condition of the serf grew steadily better, until this form of bondage was almost unknown among the lower classes. Villeinage was finally abolished, so that by the beginning of the sixteenth century all English laborers were free. As long as the system of villeinage had continued, the serfs could call upon their masters for help in sickness and old age, but later they were dependent entirely upon themselves.

## Appendix

The knighthood of the Middle Ages rendered a real service to the world. Chivalry, "the flower of feudalism," taught the warrior the worth of honor and justice. His "military brotherhood" set an example of courage and self-reliance, well voiced by his ancient war cry, "I trust my sword, I trust my steed, but most I trust myself at need."

Since *The Black Arrow* treats so much of knights, it is interesting to know the sort of houses they lived in. Fortified manor houses were replacing the ancient castles, partly because the crown frowned on private castles, and partly because the nobles wanted more comfortable homes. They now wanted homes that were just strong enough to keep out robbers and withstand ordinary disorders. Many of the old castles, however, were still inhabited during the fifteenth century. They were built in the form of a square citadel, with very thick walls, and had a few narrow windows in the lower story and larger ones above. They were surrounded by a stone wall and a deep moat. A drawbridge protected their entrance. They were constructed with one object in view, that of making them strong and secure.

The manors of the nobility were very elegant for the age in which they were built, but they would seem crude and inconvenient according to the standards of to-day. The great hall, chambers, kitchen, stables, and other outhouses were connected, forming a courtyard. By the fourteenth century, the number of separate bedrooms was increased. A fireplace was built at one or both ends of the immense hall, and the holes in the

## Social Background

wall, covered by shutters, were largely replaced by glass windows. Many of these windows were of stained glass and portrayed historical scenes in rich and vivid colors. The people of this century seemed to glory in beautiful colors, for the walls of their rooms were either brightly painted or hung with gorgeous tapestry. Even the church woodwork left of this period shows traces of color that must once have shown with bright splendor.

The hall formed the center of the house, and provided a living-room for the household. Here the chairs, benches, chests, and similar pieces of furniture seemed more like the dignified, heavy furnishings of a church than what we consider necessary for a home.

The floors of the bed chambers were often strewn with rushes, as had been the floors of the great halls in earlier days. The bed-hangings in these rooms were of rich embroidery. Sometimes the walls depicted the scenes of favorite romances, either painted or on tapestries; or they were hung with freshly-cut boughs, to make the rooms cool and pleasant.

The rich nobles indulged themselves in many luxuries. Their dress especially reflected the extravagance of the times. Silks, velvets, and cloth of gold were worn by both men and women. Very long and pointed shoes were the fashion. The courtiers' doublets, or jackets, were of the most costly materials, and were elaborately puffed. On state occasions, the ladies wore enormous jeweled head-dresses that towered high above their heads. In all, the dress of the fifteenth century was extreme in fashion and brilliant in coloring.

The manner of living among the lower classes con-



## Appendix

trusted sharply with that of the nobility. Here the homes were poor huts with walls of clay and reeds, and floors of mud, covered with rushes. They were indeed "dark, cheerless, and unhealthy dwellings." Tea, coffee, and wheaten bread were unheard-of delicacies. The country people lived on peas, beans, and similar food in the summer, and salt meat and fish in the winter. They would have stood aghast at sight of the sumptuous banquets served in the fine manor houses.

Those who lived in towns were not much better off. On account of insufficient food and unsanitary conditions, they were often swept by plagues and famines. Each small town lived for the most part by itself, making its own clothes and growing its own food. Roads were in bad condition during much of the year, and were infested with thieves. This lack of communication hindered the progress of agriculture in outlying districts and increased the periods of famine.

The poorer classes were at the mercy of unscrupulous nobles. Even as late as 1487, the owners of the great estates supported a vast retinue of men, who, protected by the colors of their lord's livery, tormented and robbed their weaker neighbors. Even if they were caught, they could not be punished. Their powerful masters would attend the county courts with scores of their followers and "maintain" their cause by terrifying judge and jury.

"Irregular work, poor food, unhealthy homes, wars, riot, famine, and pestilence" placed the laborer in far worse conditions than he is to-day. Yet the lower classes were in better circumstances than they had been

## Social Background

in the previous century. The condition of serfdom was disappearing and many of those serfs that remained were allowed to buy their freedom. The peasants were given the opportunity of bettering themselves, and the small farmers or yeomen were reasonably comfortable. The middle classes grew steadily better off, and many yeomen and merchants gained lands and became "landed gentlemen."

The greatest of the nobles still kept courts like princes, surrounded by elegance of satins, furs, jewels and plate; but they had exhausted themselves with civil strife and the battle of Bosworth Field had sounded their death knell. Their power passed into the hands of the king, and England at last became a united nation.

A discussion of the social conditions of this century would not be complete without some mention of an invention that meant more to England and the world, than can be rightly estimated. One of the most important events of the age was the introduction into England of the art of printing.

William Caxton had learned the new art of printing at Cologne, and, in 1477, returned to his native country and set up a small press in London. He became not only a printer of reputation, but an editor and translator. He gave the world the first printed works of Chaucer, preserving for all time those poems of "the father of English poetry." He printed history, poetry, and the classics, preparing eighteen thousand volumes of precious reading matter that had never before been put within the reach of the common people. Besides mak-

## Appendix

ing books the property of all, he helped to make the dialect of London the literary language of England.

It is hard to appreciate the debt that the English people owed Caxton. The religion of the country at this time was Catholic, and in the monasteries could be found the only books anywhere available. The monks had laboriously made these books by hand, and chained them to desks, so that they could not be stolen. The day was vanishing when men of the clergy were the only educated members of society. There now came about a great revival in learning, in which it was possible for both the rich and the poor to share.

It was a bloody and lawless age, in too much turmoil to produce a great literary genius, or foster education. The introduction of printing at this time, however, was a mighty factor in the spreading of knowledge. The Wars of the Roses destroyed the power of the nobles; but under the rule of the powerful King Henry VII, the country was united by a national spirit of patriotism. Lawless as it was, it was the age in which our modern world broke away from the bondage of the Middle Ages, and struggled into being.

### TOPICS FOR GROUP DISCUSSION

#### Prologue

What does the word "prologue" mean?

Let us divide the prologue into the following parts:

Historical Interest

Description of Characters

Information Important to the Plot

Description of the Setting of the Story

## Topics for Group Discussion

### *Historical Interest*

1. Did the men of the fifteenth century enter into warfare because of a feeling of national patriotism?
2. Contrast the desire that led the knights to warfare with the feeling of the common people concerning it.
3. Did the events of this story take place in the early days of feudalism, when a lord's followers were compelled to fight without any reward for their service?
4. What was the religion of the country?
5. Make a report of the famous battle of Agincourt.
6. Who were the Lollards, that Sir Oliver could scornfully say, "A right Lollardy word"?
7. Write briefly your opinion of King Henry VI and his Queen.
8. What does John Amend-All's letter remind you of? Retell one or two stories of another English outlaw of the "Green Wood."

### *Description of Characters*

1. Who are the characters to whom we are introduced in the prologue?
2. These characters are introduced in a very skilful manner. Mention a few adjectives that are used to describe them.
3. A character may also be described by his action, speech, or what is said about him. Using these three points, describe a character in this story.



## Appendix

### *Information Important to the Plot*

1. What do you think is the subject of this story?
2. What is the relationship between Sir Daniel and Richard Shelton?
3. Why do the inhabitants of Tunstall hate Sir Daniel and his men?
4. What causes us to suspect Sir Oliver of complicity in the death of Sir Harry Shelton?
5. What part do you expect John Amend-All to play in the story?

### *Description of the Setting of the Story*

The setting of a story need not mean simply a description of the surroundings in which the action of the story takes place. It means this and much more. It includes all the author's quaint phrases that produce the effect of the historical age in which the story is placed. All the author's clever devices that make us imagine a situation quickly and clearly, as if it were a picture flashed before us, with every detail correct, help to form the proper setting for a story. Characters must speak in the words of their generation and they must be correctly dressed. If the action takes place indoors, we must in some way understand what the surroundings look like. The same is true of action out-of-doors. Stevenson is a master in the art of making a clear and colorful setting for a story. It is interesting to watch how he does it:

1. Trace the swift steps that lead up to Appleyard's sudden death. This event comes as a

## Topics for Group Discussion

complete surprise to us, and yet we have been so cleverly prepared for it that it seems quite probable.

2. Can you imagine the surroundings in which this tragedy takes place?

Can you see the interior of Appleyard's house?

No words are wasted, a sentence or two does the work. Are the words ordinary ones?

3. With a little thought, you can explain such quaint expressions as these :

- a. "Pull me a good pull upon the arrow." (Watch this use of the personal pronoun throughout the story.)

- b. "This knave arrow likes me not."

- c. "Keep ever forward, Master Shelton, turn me not back again."

- d. "The best consolation is to heir him."

- e. "Which should he be that doth so hardily outface us?"

- f. *Here* is often used for *there*. Find examples of such use.

- g. The words *shrew* and *shrewd* are used with many different shades of meaning. Find the definition of these words in the dictionary, and determine their meaning according to the need of the sentence in which they are found.

4. How are the people of the prologue dressed?

5. Make a report telling about the costume of this century. This is a fascinating subject and the ordinary library should give sufficient material for a report.

## Appendix

6. Describe the appearance of a small English village, as you imagine it looked, after reading the first few pages of the prologue.

### Books I-II

#### *Historical Interest*

1. Describe the appearance of an early English manor. Draw a diagram of a manor, or make a model of one.
2. What was the ordinary training necessary for a young man who wished to become a knight?
3. Give an oral report concerning the invention of gunpowder, and tell something of its use in England in the fifteenth century.
4. What were the amusements of this period? (An excellent book for reference is *Everyday Things in England*, by Marjory and C. H. B. Quinell.)
5. How was England governed in this century? What was the condition of the tenants described in *The Black Arrow*?
6. "The world might change again," people said in these days; and Sir Daniel remarked, "the realm tosseth with the rebellion." What was the reason for this? Can you explain the common people's unconcern for the fate of their national leaders? Why were they interested in the success or ill-fortune of the knights of their neighborhood?
7. "The better man throweth the worse," said Dick. This was the common standard of the day. Is it always a fair standard for society to follow?

## Topics for Group Discussion

8. Explain, "The sound of many feet, the challenge, and the password sounded overhead along the battlements; the watch was being changed."  
Book II, Chapter III.

### *Description of Characters*

1. How may Sir Daniel be characterized through his actions? His character undergoes a decided change. As Joanna says, "Y' are now to see a new Sir Daniel." How can you account for this?
2. Why was Sir Daniel well liked as a leader in war-time? How did he show himself an able captain?
3. Do you have any feeling of pity for Sir Oliver? What sort of man was he?
4. What likable qualities does Bennet Hatch possess?
5. Does Dick disclose his character through his speech? Give a few instances of this. Why does he not believe what he overhears at the gathering of the outlaws about the death of his father? In the first paragraph of Chapter II, Book I, Stevenson gives in one sentence a description of Dick that tells all we need to know about him.
6. What do we learn of Joanna through her actions? How does she prove her courage in a crisis? How does she show her loyalty to Dick? Does Dick's opinion of Matcham change? Quote the tribute that he pays Joanna when he realizes her disguise. Do you agree with it?



## Appendix

### *Information Important to the Plot*

When you have finished reading a chapter of *The Black Arrow*, ask yourself the questions:

1. What do I remember?
2. What needs to be explained?

If you have been alert while reading, you will remember the essential parts of each chapter. Stevenson is so skilful a craftsman that he causes certain events to stand out in importance. These are the events you should watch for, and the ones you should remember. You may be sure that they bear directly upon the plot. In a like manner, you will remember certain characters and certain things about these characters.

Various points in the story need explaining. If, after you have thought over preceding events, and have studied the social and historical background, you cannot find an explanation, wait for the story to throw more light on the subject. These points are often quite valuable ones and the fact that you can't explain them only adds mystery to the plot.

1. What is the purpose of the fellowship of the Black Arrow?
2. What is the significance of the watchword "Duckworth and Shelton"?
3. In how many ways did Ellis Duckworth shield Dick from harm at the hands of his men?
4. Why had Sir Daniel cared for Dick through his boyhood? Explain his interest in Joanna.
5. How might the note that Dick found on Throgmorton cause Sir Daniel's death?

## Topics for Group Discussion

6. As soon as Dick realizes Sir Daniel's guilt, he feels it his duty to avenge his father's death. When does this realization come to him?
7. How do we first know about the leper's bell? By means of this bell, we are told the whole story of the leper's approach and the fright of Dick and Matcham.

### *Description of the Setting of the Story*

1. Many steps have prepared us for the final disclosure of John Matcham's identity. Stevenson set his stage cleverly, taking great care to unfold this incident clearly, naturally, and even humorously. When did you first suspect that Matcham was a girl? What later events strengthened your suspicions?
2. In what three ways did Stevenson heighten the excitement of Dick's flight from the room above the chapel? Why was it a good thing that the murderer came when he did?
3. The charm of other days and an expressive humor characterize these sentences. It is not difficult to find similar ones.
  - a. "Time's in the saddle."
  - b. "I made sure I would marry Hamley in his teeth."
  - c. "See there how shuttle-witted are these girls."
4. How did the outlaws appear, equipped, as Stevenson says, "in the height of forest gallantry"?
5. Dramatize the scene in which the outlaws are gathered about the ruins of Grimstone.

## Appendix

Comment on the danger of Dick's and Matcham's position.

6. Describe one of the following, in oral or in written composition :
  - a. The dining hall at the Moat House.
  - b. The hall in which Dick is put secretly on trial by Sir Daniel.
  - c. Dick's room above the chapel.
  - d. The courtyard, as you imagined it looked on the night that Dick escaped from the Moat House.
  - e. The Moat House, as it appeared to Dick and Matcham reflected "in the lilled waters of the moat."
  - f. This sort of forest : "It was a pillared grove, as high as a cathedral." Book I, Chapter VI.
  - g. The evening on which Dick and Matcham groped their way through the forest, until, wearied and disheartened, they found a woodland stream and "putting their mouths to the level of a starry pool, they drank their fill."
7. Write a stanza of poetry containing some of these words : "The sky was all blue ; the jolly wind blew loud and steady ; the windmill sails were spinning ; and the willows over all the fen rippling and whitening like a field of corn." Book I, Chapter II.
8. Discuss the unusual description in the second paragraph of Chapter III, Book I, beginning : "It was a dingy stream —"
9. Make a list of especially descriptive sentences, such as :

## Topics for Group Discussion

a. "The eastern sky was barred with solemn colors."

b. "The wind tussled with the leaves."

### *Story Interest*

In this section let us consider the qualities of the book that add distinctly to the interest of the story. Find one or two examples that illustrate the following :

1. A difference in the customs of the fifteenth century and those of to-day.
2. Conversation that is especially attractive and true to life.
3. A narrow escape.
4. The superstitions of the day.
5. Humor.
6. Mystery.

### Books III-IV-V

### *Historical Interest*

1. In the form of an oral report, tell some interesting facts about the armor of this century. Illustrate the talk by pictures that you have found in histories or novels. Where does Stevenson say the footmen sometimes "perched," while going to and from an encounter? Describe the scene in which this happened in *The Black Arrow*.
2. Explain the ancient English curfew law that required all fires and candles to be put out at a certain time.
3. Discuss this statement: "so careless, in those days, were men who wore arms of the goods and interests of their inferiors." Book IV, Chapter VI.



## Appendix

4. When Dick, Lord Foxham, and their shipwrecked crew leave the ill-fated *Good Hope*, they are given a cold reception by the men who think them French pirates. What part of this episode illustrates the utter lack of national responsibility felt by the ordinary people of the day?
5. In the great houses of this century it was the fashion to be hospitable. What were some of the forms of entertainment offered guests? Book IV, Chapter II.
6. Though no reference is made in *The Black Arrow* to the fairs, guilds, or industries of the age, very interesting reports could be made about them. It was in this century that Columbus discovered America, and the story of the interest of the English crown in his enterprise and of English participation in new trade routes, provides excellent material for reports.
7. How does Stevenson prophesy the gloomy events of the reign of the Duke of Gloucester, as King Richard III of England?
8. What sort of education do you suppose Dick had been given? What sort had been given Joanna?
9. Though "the dust and blood of that unruly epoch" left little time for the finer arts, the Reformation and the Renaissance were felt in England at this time. The following topics suggest good material for oral or written reports:

## Topics for Group Discussion

- a. Wycliffe
- b. Chaucer
- c. Religious drama
- d. Early English literature (See *The Child's English Literature*, by H. E. Marshall, for the last two topics.)

### *Description of Characters*

1. What makes Joanna an unusual heroine? The fine qualities she possesses are unfolded as the story progresses.
  - a. How did she appear to Dick as he, surprised and confused, saw her in the deserted house? On at least two occasions we are reminded of her beauty, once by Lord Shoreby, and once by Richard of Gloucester.
  - b. Did Joanna spend much time in weeping over the tragic arrangements for her marriage to Lord Shoreby? How did she face this predicament? Why was she powerless to interfere?
  - c. How did she prove her lasting faithfulness to Dick?
2. How was Dick's heart awakened to the miserable cost of warfare and suffering caused by the struggles between the nobles?
  - a. What do we learn of his character through his encounter with Lord Foxham?
  - b. What qualities did he possess that won his knight-hood?
  - c. Upon what occasions did his quickness of wit save his life?
  - d. Account for his lack of wisdom upon one or two occasions.



## Topics for Group Discussion

6. Which royal cause does Earl Risingham sponsor, York or Lancaster? On which side is Lord Foxham?
7. Who proves, throughout the entire story, to be Dick's staunch and "friendly enemy"? What fate overtakes him?
8. If you were dramatizing this story, and could choose your cast from any of the well known actors and actresses of to-day, whom would you choose? Tell why each of these would be qualified to play the rôle you have assigned him. Does the book provide for a comedian?

### *Information Important to the Plot*

1. What position did Dick hold in the outlaw band during the absence of Ellis Duckworth? Explain why this was of great value to him and to his cause.
2. How was Ellis' opportune return of great consequence to Dick?
3. In what way did Dick profit by his friendship with Lord Foxham?
4. Enumerate the misfortunes that assailed the venture of the *Good Hope*.
5. How did the story of Ali Baba save the day for Dick? Retell this good story. (Kate Douglas Wiggin's edition of *The Arabian Nights* gives an excellent version.)
6. How did the note that Dick found on Throgmorton free him from a dangerous predicament?
7. Explain Dick's sudden rise to fortune at the hands of the Duke of Gloucester.



## Appendix

8. Describe the battle at Shoreby. How long did it last? How was it finally won?
9. Who founded the fellowship of the Black Arrow? Of all the men threatened in the note of the prologue, whom had the outlaws actually doomed? What is the last that we hear of the fellowship?
10. Upon what occasions did Sir Daniel betray his extreme terror of the band of the Black Arrow? He shows himself a coward on many occasions, but is most cowardly when seized by the fear of this dread enemy. At various times during the story, he prophesies his own fate, and the fate of all those sought by the outlaws. This adds a strong element of mystery and foreboding to the plot. What is the one thing that Sir Daniel says, after he is mortally wounded by Duckworth?
11. At the end of the story, which of the two great royal families is victorious, the House of Lancaster or of York?

### *Description of the Setting of the Story*

1. Dramatize your favorite incident in *The Black Arrow*. Describe the setting and costumes with great care.
2. What are the dramatic qualities of the gruesome night that Dick spent in the chapel with Sir Oliver and the man he had slain? What hard choice was Dick compelled to make? Stevenson has made us see the characters

## Topics for Group Discussion

and surroundings of this incident with vivid clearness.

3. Stevenson does not tell any of the painful details concerning the death of the Earl of Risingham. Find this scene and note how deftly it is described.
4. Watch the swiftness and sureness of Stevenson's descriptions. He paints his scenes with one stroke of his brush. His words are few and carefully chosen. There is much poetic rhythm in his prose, especially in the prose of his descriptions. Often these brief and beautiful descriptions are placed directly after periods of intensely dramatic action. In this way, both the description and the action gain through contrast to each other. Do you know some of the devices the dramatist uses, when he wishes to relieve the strain of exciting and perhaps tragic action in his play?
5. Without looking at the book, describe the eventful meeting of Dick and Richard of Gloucester at St. Bride's Cross. If you have read this incident carefully, you cannot forget it, for it is one of the many pictures in the book that Stevenson has placed clearly and forcibly before you.
6. It is worth while to study sentences like these for expressive thought and for figures of speech :
  - a. "The air smelt salt."
  - b. "And, for the bull's-eye of misfortune, see if it snow not ere the morning."

## Appendix

- c.* "The sound of their steps had been swallowed by the wind."
- d.* "He put his ear to the ground, and it seemed to him as if he heard a jarring and hollow noise from townward."
- e.* "He saw them disappear in the thick curtain of the falling snow."
- f.* "I sit alone with my good gossip the fire."
- g.* "His bald head was seen to be rosy with emotion."
- h.* "Dick's ears rang and his brain swam dizzily, like a man struggling in the eddies of a furious river."
- i.* "He hath been gallows-ripe this score of years."
- j.* "Peace fellow! Will ye put your oar in! Truly a fine pass, when the crew is to correct the skipper!"
- k.* "So, spying a dark doorway, he whipped briskly into it, and let the uncouth hunt go by him, still shouting and gesticulating, and all red with hurry, and white with tumbles in the snow."
- l.* "Shoreby, a field of snowy roofs and ruddy gables, was rolling up its columns of morning smoke."
- m.* "As swift as a striking adder, the long steel-clad column was launched upon the ruinous barricade."
- n.* "A stream strained sobbing through the snow and ice."
- o.* "The dull beat of many horses on the snow suddenly arose in the hollow ear of the night."
- p.* "Forth, then, they went, through open leafless groves and down snow-clad alleys, under the white face of the winter moon."
- q.* "The great windows of the forest abbey shone with torch and candle; its high pinnacles and

## Topics for Group Discussion

spires arose very clear and silent, and the gold rood upon the topmost summit glittered brightly in the moon. All about it, in the open glade, camp fires were burning, and the ground was thick with huts; and across the midst of the picture the frozen river curved."

7. "Great billows heaved up out of the blackness, one after another; and one after another the *Good Hope* buoyantly climbed, and giddily plunged upon the further side. A thin sprinkle of snow and thin flakes of foam came flying, and powdered the deck; and the wind harped dismally among the rigging."
  8. "Presently the moon was silvering the frozen snow."
7. Describe this scene: "The soldiery were getting to arms in the wintry twilight of the dawn and by the red glow of torches." Book V, Chapter VII.
  8. Describe orally, one of the following:
    - a. Lawless' den.
    - b. The interior of Sir Daniel's Shoreby house. (Stevenson gives brief, vivid glimpses of the hallways, dining-hall, and Joanna's room.)

### Summary

1. Did you live with *The Black Arrow* in thoughts while reading it and afterwards?
2. Which characters do you remember best? Give a sentence description of each.
3. Make a list of the unusual adjectives that you remember.



## Appendix

4. Were you interested in the romance of the historical age about which the plot of *The Black Arrow* was woven? What did you find especially attractive in this period of history?
5. Name one or two circumstances that heighten the mystery and add to the complication of the story plot.
6. Write a theme in which you make use of many of the quaint expressions found in *The Black Arrow*.
7. Write a story in which you suddenly wake up to find yourself in one of the predicaments told about in *The Black Arrow*. (After the manner of *A Connecticut Yankee in King Arthur's Court*, by Mark Twain.)
8. What do you think Stevenson's purpose was in writing *The Black Arrow*?
9. These sentences are worth thinking about. What have you to say about them? Can you find others like them?
  - a. "War is but noble by the cause."
  - b. "Where whining mendeth nothing, wherefore whine?"
  - c. "For the first time he began to understand the desperate game that we play in life, and how a thing once done is not to be changed or remedied by any penitence."
  - d. "Nay, but against traitors, are not all sides arrayed?"
  - e. "But if ye have so long pursued revenge, and find it now of such a sorry flavor, bethink ye, were it not well to pardon others?"

## Topics for Group Discussion

10. In as few words as possible, tell the theme or subject of each book in *The Black Arrow*; then of the entire story. This is not difficult if you ask yourself the question: What was the story about? For example: This is the story of a boy who sought to avenge the death of his father, win his spurs, and the hand of "the fairest maid of England." Or: "This story tells how the fellowship of the Black Arrow righted wrongs, saved Dick's life, helped him win Joanna, and revenged the death of his father." In similar fashion, you might find the theme for Book III: "Dick allies himself with Lord Foxham and is given a packet of letters introducing him to the Duke of Gloucester."
11. What qualities in Stevenson do you admire, as a writer, and as a man? Learn a poem or quotation from Stevenson that expresses his brave outlook on life.
12. When reading the biography of Stevenson, it is well to remember that the most important periods of a person's life seem to come at the beginning and the end. The period between is a sort of workshop. It is the materials he has to start with and what he makes of them that really matter. What materials did Stevenson have? What use did he make of them? What fortunate qualities did Stevenson inherit? What are the characteristic virtues of the Scotch? What other great Scotch writers do you know?

## Appendix

### BOOKS THAT TELL THE STORY OF OTHER DAYS

There's a far bell ringing,  
And a phantom voice is singing  
Of renown forever clinging  
To the great days done.

— HENRY NEWBOLT

#### England

#### DURING THE REIGNS OF THE HOUSES OF LANCASTER AND YORK

Henry IV, 1399-1413

*Men of Iron*, by Howard Pyle

Henry V, 1413-1422

*At Agincourt*, by George A. Henty

*The Caged Lion*, by Charlotte M. Yonge

Henry VI, 1422-1461

*Personal Recollections of Joan of Arc*, by Samuel  
Clemens (Mark Twain)

*Joan of Arc*, by Boutet de Monvel

Edward IV, 1461-1483

*The Last of the Barons*, by Bulwer Lytton

*The Cloister and the Hearth*, by Charles Reade

Richard III, 1483-1485

*King Richard III*, by William Shakespeare

#### DURING OTHER INTERESTING EPOCHS

*Master Skylark*, by John Bennett. The adventures of a boy who lived at Stratford during the time of Queen Elizabeth.

*Prince and the Pauper*, by Samuel Clemens. A prince and a poor boy change places in the reign of Henry VIII.

## The Story of Other Days

*Beowulf, the Hero of the Anglo-Saxons*, by John Cox. A brave story that tells how Beowulf slew a monster, and performed many other daring deeds.

*Tales of the Canterbury Pilgrims*, by Harvey Darton. Chaucer's famous tales of the Tabard Inn told so that boys and girls can enjoy them.

*The Dark Frigate*, by Charles Boardman Hawes. An adventure story of the time of Cromwell.

*Hereward, the Wake*, by Charles Kingsley. The heroic exploits of the English in their stand against the Norman conquerors.

*The Boy's King Arthur*, by Sidney Lanier. "Being Sir Thomas Malory's History of King Arthur and his Knights of the Round Table," interesting to boys and girls alike.

*Cedric the Forester*, by Bernard Marshall. A tale of chivalry and of brave deeds performed during the days of the thirteenth century.

*Merry Adventures of Robin Hood*, by Howard Pyle. A fine version of these immortal legends.

*Kenilworth*, by Sir Walter Scott. An interesting and colorful picture of the time of Queen Elizabeth.

*When Knights Were Bold*, by Eva March Tappan. A spirited story of the age of feudalism.

### The United States

*Standish of Standish*, by Jane Austen. A story of the Pilgrims of Plymouth colony.

*Barnaby Lee*, by John Bennett. Chronicles of New Amsterdam and Peter Stuyvesant, enlivened by encounters with pirates.



## Appendix

*Richard Carvel*, by Winston Churchill. An interesting picture of life in Maryland before the Revolutionary War.

*The Crisis*, by Winston Churchill. A stirring Civil War story.

*Last of the Mohicans*, by James Fenimore Cooper. Adventures among the Indians during the French and Indian Wars.

*Little Shepherd of Kingdom Come*, by John Fox, Jr. The blue grass country forms the setting for a brave romance of the Civil War.

*To Have and to Hold*, by Mary Johnston. A story of the adventurous early days of Virginia.

*Hugh Wynne*, by S. W. Mitchell. Life in Philadelphia during the Revolution, showing a vivid picture of many of the greatest characters in American history.

*Story of Jack Ballister's Fortunes*, by Howard Pyle. Thrilling experiences of a young man of 1719, who meets the pirate Blackbeard.

*The Scarlet Cockerel*, by C. M. Sublette. The adventures of French Huguenot colonists in the Carolinas.

### France

*The Legends of Charlemagne*, by Thomas Bulfinch. Splendid stories of brave warriors and a great emperor.

*The White Company*, by A. Conan Doyle. Thrilling episodes of the Hundred Years War.

*Count of Monte Cristo*, by Alexandre Dumas. Rapid action and bold adventure at the time of the First Empire.

## The Story of Other Days

*The Three Musketeers*, by Alexandre Dumas. Intrigues, court life, and sword fights in 1626.

*Reds of the Midi*, by Felix Gras. An exciting story of the French Revolution.

*Boy of the Lost Crusade*, by Agnes Hewes. A brave boy risks death in the Children's Crusade.

*Quentin Durward*, by Sir Walter Scott. A rich and many-sided picture of feudalism and chivalry in the fifteenth century.

*Gentleman of France*, by S. G. Weyman. A romance of the time of Henry of Navarre.

*The Little Duke*, by Charlotte M. Yonge. The youth and adventures of Richard the Fearless, Duke of Normandy.

### Other Countries

*Islands of the Mighty*, by Padraic Colum. Tales of heroism in Ireland at the time of King Arthur.

*A Friend of Cæsar's*, by William Davis. A story that lends a touch of realism to the life of Rome's greatest commander.

*In the Days of the Guild*, by Louise Lamprey. Tales of the Middle Ages, of ladies, knights, and master craftsmen.

*Children of Ancient Rome*, by Louise Lamprey. A delightful picture of the days before the founding of Rome.

*Last Days of Pompeii*, by Bulwer-Lytton. Romance woven about the fortunes of those living at the time of the destruction of Pompeii.

*Book of the Happy Warrior*, by Henry Newbolt. A book of chivalry.

## Appendix

*Don Quixote of the Mancha*, retold by Judge Parry. "Of the never-to-be-imagined adventure with the wind-mill, and other notable happenings."

*Scottish Chiefs*, by Jane Porter. Romantic chronicles of Scotland's struggle for independence, centering about many great warriors and their leader, William Wallace.

*The Spartan*, by Caroline Snedeker. A story that tells why Aristodemus was called the Coward of Thermopylæ.

*Story of the Cid*, by C. D. Wilson. A splendid heroic story of Spain.















